



LEARN ENGLISH NOW

ENGLISHCONNECT



Pilot Use Only
May 2017

Learn English Now



Welcome to *Learn English Now*. The ability to speak English will be a great blessing in your life. English skills can improve your daily life, help you pursue educational opportunities, lead to better employment, and expand your circles of friends and acquaintances.

EnglishConnect is made up of several English courses. *Learn English Now* is for novice speakers without internet access. It helps learners build conversational skills through both classroom and at-home study. *Speak UP!* is used to teach similar skills using classroom and online study. EnglishConnect Intermediate is an online course for learners who have mastered the conversational skills taught at the novice level. It includes instruction in reading and writing in preparation for academic course work in Pathway L. Pathway L Version builds more advanced English skills while helping learners pursue higher education and better employment. These courses also give learners opportunities to learn more about the fundamental teachings of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints if they desire to do so.

This book will help learners during the *Learn English Now* course. It contains activities for each lesson and other helpful resources. However, learners cannot learn English from this book alone. For this reason, it is important that you practice English diligently in between classes.

As learners and instructors work together in EnglishConnect classes, each experiences the blessings of sacrifice, work, self-reliance, and love. Your positive attitude, preparation, and dedication to these lessons will improve your life and the lives of others.

Best wishes!

Bienvenido a Learn English Now. La aptitud para hablar inglés será una gran bendición en su vida. Sus aptitudes en inglés pueden mejorar su vida cotidiana, ayudarlo a buscar oportunidades educativas, guiarlo a un mejor empleo y expandir su grupo de amigos y conocidos.

EnglishConnect se compone de varios cursos de inglés. Learn English Now es para participantes sin acceso a internet. Ayuda a los alumnos a desarrollar aptitudes de conversación tanto al estudiar en el salón de clase como en la casa. Speak UP! se usa para enseñar aptitudes similares al estudiar en el salón de clase como en línea. EnglishConnect Intermediate es un curso en línea para alumnos que han llegado a dominar las aptitudes de conversación en el nivel principiante. Esto incluye la enseñanza en expresión oral y escrita a fin de prepararlos para los trabajos de cursos académicos en Pathway L. En la versión L de Pathway se desarrollan aptitudes en inglés más avanzadas mientras que se ayuda a los alumnos a seguir estudios superiores y a buscar un mejor empleo. En estos cursos también se ofrecen a los alumnos oportunidades de aprender más sobre las enseñanzas fundamentales de La Iglesia de Jesucristo de los Santos de los Últimos Días si así desean hacerlo.

Este manual ayudará a los alumnos durante el curso Learn English Now. Contiene actividades para cada lección y otros recursos útiles. Sin embargo, los alumnos no pueden aprender inglés solo utilizando este manual. Por ese motivo, es importante que practique inglés con diligencia entre una clase y otra.

Conforme los alumnos e instructores trabajen juntos en las clases de EnglishConnect, cada uno experimentará las bendiciones del sacrificio, del trabajo, de la autosuficiencia y del amor. Su actitud positiva, preparación y dedicación a esas lecciones mejorará su vida y la vida de los demás.

¡Le deseamos éxito!

Contents

	For Instructors	xi
Preface	Getting Started	1
Module 1	Pronunciation	15
Module 2	Introductory Vocabulary	35
Module 3	Greetings and Introductions	55
Module 4	Directions inside a Building	77
Module 5	Responsibilities and Activities	95
Module 6	Making a Doctor's Appointment	111
Module 7	Buying Shoes	135
Module 8	How's the Weather?	151
Module 9	Directions Outside	167
Module 10	Buying a Dress	185
Module 11	Buying Appliances	199
Module 12	Buying Groceries	213
Module 13	Learning English from Films	227
Module 14	Getting a Ride	241
Module 15	Making a New Friend	255
Module 16	Discussing the Day	273
Module 17	Preparation for the OPIc Certification Exam	274
	Supplemental Resource Materials	321
	Supplemental Career English	339

Conversation

Pronunciation

Vocabulary

Language Focus

MY GOAL:

MY ENGLISH PRACTICE PLAN					
Week	Class Attendance	60 Common Verbs	Practice with Audio	Review Vocabulary	Lesson Flash Fold Card(s)
Example	3 hrs.	1 hr.	1 hr.	1 hr.	1 hr.
Week 1					
Week 2					
Week 3					
Week 4					
Week 5					
Week 6					
Week 7					
Week 8					
Week 9					
Week 10					
Week 11					
Week 12					
Week 13					
Week 14					
Week 15					
Week 16					
Week 17					
Week 18					
Week 19					

MY GOAL:

MY ENGLISH PRACTICE PLAN					
Week	Class attendance	60 common verbs	Practice with Audio	Review Vocabulary	Lesson Flash Fold Card(s)
Week 20					
Week 21					
Week 22					
Week 23					
Week 24					
Week 25					
Week 26					
Week 27					
Week 28					
Week 29					
Week 30					
Week 31					
Week 32					
Week 33					
Week 34					
Week 35					
Week 36					
Week 37					
Week 38					
Week 39					

FOR INSTRUCTORS

Welcome to EnglishConnect: *Learn English Now*

Thank you for becoming an instructor for EnglishConnect: *Learn English Now*. Teaching English will be a wonderful opportunity to serve your fellowmen (see Mosiah 2:17). It will also be a rewarding experience as you see learners' abilities to speak and converse in English improve while they experience positive changes in their lives.

What Is *Learn English Now*?

Learn English Now has been created to help learners speak and converse in English on a basic level. For this reasons, book sections and activities focus heavily on pronunciation, vocabulary, and the memorization of dialogs (or conversations).

Your role in this course is to model (or be an example) for your learners, to guide them through the book's activities, and to encourage and support them in their learning efforts. Show genuine excitement and support and give appropriate praise to your learners. This will influence and encourage them to keep moving forward, especially during challenging times.

Who Participates in This Course?

Those participating in this course are:

- instructors.
- assistant instructors.
- learners.

Instructors

Instructors are responsible for preparing class materials and guiding learners through the *Learn English Now* activities. They can also review learners' progress in My English Practice Plan. Instructors encourage learners and praise them for their efforts and progress in learning English.

Assistant Instructors

Assistant instructors have a major influence on the learners' progress. They are especially helpful in small group activities, in which they give learners more personalized attention, feedback, and help with specific English-speaking skills, such as pronunciation and vocabulary.

When learners are not working in small groups, assistant instructors may help the instructors demonstrate a dialog or activity to the class.

Like the instructors, assistant instructors are also to encourage learners and help them succeed in their learning during class time.

Unlike instructors, assistant instructors do not need to prepare a lesson.

Since assistant instructors are to help learners with their pronunciation and other class activities, their class attendance and enthusiastic attitude with learners are essential.

Learners

Your learners will have different motives to learn English. These can include opportunities to get a better education or better salaries or to expand their circle of friends. Become genuinely interested in their motives, and help learners achieve their goals. This will help them through hard times.

How Does This Course Work?

This course is designed to give learners guided practice twice a week and to let them practice on their own in between classes. The recommended practice time in a week should be 10 hours.

Guided practices (classes) take a total of 3 hours per week. Each class is to last 90 minutes. For each class session, use the *Learn English Now* content for about 70 minutes. Then, for the last 20 minutes, divide the class in small groups (3 to 5 learners) and have them do the following:

- Read and discuss a principle from *My Foundation*. Use the time at the end of the first or second class to introduce or review *My Foundation* with the learners. Then use one principle

each week. Reading a *My Foundation* principle can be done at first in the native language. When learners feel more comfortable with English, read it in English.

- Use another resource (childrens' books, the Book of Mormon, or other appropriate material) that will help learners read and pronounce English words correctly. Have learners read their resource with their assistant instructors.

Class time is very important. It will give learners guided practices, a foundation for their learning outside class, and confidence to practice in between classes.

How Can You Be a Good Instructor?

Use this book as the basis of your instruction, and prepare for class:

- Read the materials and make sure you understand them.
- Select activities to do in each lesson.
- Vary your activities.
- Take objects or visual aids that could help learners with the lesson content.

Your preparation time should be about 30 minutes per class.

Use This Book Effectively

This book is divided in modules. Modules have been created to give you and your learners flexibility. Each module typically covers two classes, but it can cover more or less, depending on learners' progress and interest.

Each module has several pronunciation, vocabulary, and language focus activities. Avoid spending one class period doing only activities belonging to one category (vocabulary, for instance). Spread such activities among different class periods to have variety and keep learners engaged in the lesson.

Bring the book to class and encourage learners to do the same.

Important: Module 1 introduces the 60 most common verbs in English. Encourage learners to memorize these verbs at the beginning of the course. Memorizing the verbs will greatly help the learning process.

Manage Class Time

Let learners do most of the talking. They will gain much more from class if they take most of the time to practice. If you notice you are talking a lot, remind yourself to involve the learners more and give them opportunities to speak and practice.

Frequently have learners do small-group activities. They learn the most when they can practice with an assistant instructor.

Spend an appropriate time on each activity. Do not rush or unnecessarily prolong an activity. If you see learners practicing and engaged, let the activity run a bit longer. But if learners are too silent, bored, or tired of the activity, move to a different type of activity.

Estimate activity times. As you start the course, you may want to check the clock at the beginning and end of each activity. This will help you get an idea of how long each type of activity takes. This information will help you estimate the type and number of activities you choose to do in each lesson.

Start class on time. This will motivate learners to arrive early or on time. It is also a reward for those who make the effort to arrive on time. You may start with a Primary or other song that has simple and common English words. Then have a prayer and proceed with the lesson.

Make sure you leave 20 minutes to go over a *My Foundation* principle or a different activity at the end of each class.

Set Up the Physical Environment

You or a class president should arrive early to set up chairs and tables for learners and assistant instructors. Set them up in groups, so that each assistant instructor is sitting by a few learners. This type of setup will help learners participate more fully in the small-group activities.

Set Up a Proper Learning Environment

Create an environment in which learners feel safe and excited to participate. Have fun; be cheerful; be excited; be optimistic. Show empathy, and compliment learners on their progress.

As learners come into the room, engage them in the learning process. Greet them in English. Ask them small and simple questions appropriate to their level of understanding and communication. Have assistant instructors greet them as well and talk to them in English. Assistant instructors may also review with learners their My English Practice Plan. Learners may have questions from previous classes or about things that have happened to them since last class. This is an appropriate time for them to ask and receive answers.

When learners make mistakes, avoid embarrassing them. Do not make fun, get frustrated, or highlight learners or their mistakes. If you are not able to work individually with them, help them correct their mistake by going over the mistake as a class, without naming any learner.

Be encouraging, patient, and kind. Learning a language can be very hard for some people. Help learners in their process, and encourage them as much as possible to keep moving forward. Multiple practices and repetition are key to success.

Simplify Your Language

Speak in a way that will help learners better follow what you are saying. Your learners are at a beginning level, so speaking simply, slowly, and clearly will help them understand what you are saying.

- Use short sentences: break long or complex sentences into small and simple ones.
- Use common words: avoid using difficult or uncommon vocabulary. This applies to academic language as well as slang. For example, instead of saying, "Chat with a nonacquaintance," say "Talk with someone you don't know."

Use English as Much as Possible

Learners come to learn English, and they will learn it by hearing and practicing it. Speak as much as you can in English. You may explain the meaning of new words or expressions by:

- Using visual aids such as pictures, objects, or drawings on the board.
- Using gestures, movement, or facial expressions. For example:

- When teaching personal pronouns, point to yourself when using "I," to you and the learners when using "we," and so on.
- When teaching about the past, talk in the present tense and then take a step forward and talk in the past tense.
- When teaching body parts, touch your nose and make class members touch their noses when saying "nose."
- Smile when saying "happy," and make a sad face when saying "sad."

Follow Guidelines to Translate

There might be times that a brief translation could save time and frustration. Translate to the learners' native language if all of them use the same one. But be careful: do not make translation a habit!

Learners come to learn English, so English should be spoken as much as possible in the classroom. If translation is possible, do the following before translating:

- Explain things in English as much as possible.
- Use gestures or visual aids (see previous section) to explain what you are saying.
- Encourage learners to say what they want with the English they know.

When using translation:

- Make sure all learners understand. If some learners do not speak the language into which English was translated, they will feel left out.
- Emphasize English over the native language. If you need to translate a vocabulary word, say it in English, then translate it, and then say it again in English. Then, explain and say examples of this word in English. This will help learners switch back to English and keep them engaged in their learning.

Demonstrate Activities

Show your learners how activities should be done. A clear demonstration will help the learners know what they need to do to complete an activity. Showing learners will also help them be less nervous and feel more confident in completing an activity. Invite another instructor or

assistant instructor to help you demonstrate activities that are done with a partner.

Use a Variety of Activities

Having variety in your activities will help keep your learners engaged in class. As previously stated, avoid doing only one category of activities, such as vocabulary, in one class period. Try to spread them across classes.

Also, involve as many senses as possible to help your learners understand and remember what they did in class. Be moderate in your approach because you do not want to confuse or overwhelm your learners, but using a variety of senses helps them remember. Find activities that connect to one or more senses:

- Visual activities include drawing, seeing a picture, seeing objects, and writing.
- Audio activities include listening to a recording, a movie, a song, the instructor, or other learners.
- Kinesthetic activities include anything that involves a physical movement, such as drawing, writing, pointing, throwing, touching an object, role-playing, and so on.

Check for Understanding

Periodically check to make sure learners understand what you are teaching. Effective ways to check for understanding include:

- Asking learners to do something. For example:
 - If you just taught colors, you may ask learners to point to a green item in the room.

- Ask learners to explain something to their neighbor.

- Watching for learners' expressions and non-verbal cues. Do they look confused or like they understand?
- Observing several of your learners. Do only one or two understand, or does the majority seem to understand?

End on a Positive Note

Ending class with encouragement and compliments will further motivate learners to keep practicing in between classes and advance their learning.

Have Fun!

Just like learning a new language, teaching it can be exciting and fun. Find ways to make class enjoyable and fun for you and your learners. Playing games and showing you are having fun will make the class environment more conducive to learners' participation and learning.

Thank You

Again, thank you for becoming an instructor for EnglishConnect: *Learn English Now*. Teaching this course will give you more teaching experience and will be a wonderful opportunity to bless the lives of those in the course. Follow this course's guidelines, seek the guidance of the Spirit, and enjoy being the instructor for this course!

Introduction Lesson

GETTING STARTED

Getting Started

(1 class)

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well. Then, instructors have students introduce themselves as shown in the dialog below.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con ese diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien. Luego, los instructores hacen que los alumnos se presenten como se muestra en el diálogo a continuación.



Objectives Objetivos

At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

- find times and places to study English.
- use My English Practice Plan.
- spell my name in English.

Now I know . . .



Memorize the dialog in English.
Memorice el diálogo en inglés.

	Dialog	Diálogo
Kevin:	Hi. I am Kevin.	<i>Hola Soy Kevin.</i>
Paula:	Hi, Kevin. My name is Paula.	<i>Hola, Kevin. Me llamo Paula.</i>
Mario:	Hi, Kevin and Paula. My name is Mario.	<i>Hola, Kevin y Paula. Me llamo Mario.</i>

Instructors can make a game to have learners remember each others' names.



Welcome to EnglishConnect: *Learn English Now*

Take turns reading the text below.

Túrnense para leer el texto a continuación.

Welcome to *Learn English Now*. Though learning a language requires work, it can also be exciting, rewarding, and fun.

Learn English Now has been created to help you speak and converse in English on a basic level. How much you learn or improve on your speaking skills will depend on:

- Your motivation to learn.
- Your commitment to set appropriate times, places, and ways to learn.
- Your efforts to practice and learn in class.
- Your efforts to practice and learn in between classes.

Bienvenido a Learn English Now. Aunque aprender un idioma requiere trabajo, también puede ser emocionante, gratificante y divertido.

Learn English Now ha sido creado para ayudarle a hablar y conversar en inglés en un nivel básico. Lo mucho que aprenda o mejore en sus aptitudes al hablar dependerá de:

- *Su motivación para aprender.*
- *Su compromiso para establecer horarios, lugares y maneras apropiados de aprender.*
- *Sus esfuerzos para practicar y aprender en clase.*
- *Sus esfuerzos para practicar y aprender entre una clase y otra.*

Instructors assign different class members to read the text above.



Why Are You Learning English?

Take turns reading the text below. Complete the activities below.

Túrnense para leer el texto a continuación. Complete las actividades a continuación.

Learning English will be a great blessing in your life. It can help you pursue educational opportunities, lead to better employment, and help you expand your circle of friends and acquaintances.

Ponder:

- Why are you learning English?
- What do you want to achieve with your English skills?

Writing down why you are learning English will give you a specific reason to stay in this course. It will give you motivation, and it will direct your efforts to learn. An English goal will also help you measure and evaluate your progress toward it.

Take a minute to write your English goal below. Do not worry about making it perfect. Your goal may change or become more specific over time. What is important is that you set your own goal and review it from time to time. Remembering why you are learning English can help you stay motivated to continue and complete this course.

I'm learning English so that I can

Aprender inglés será una gran bendición en su vida. Puede ayudarlo a buscar oportunidades educativas, guiarlo a un mejor empleo y expandir su grupo de amigos y conocidos.

Medite:

- *¿Por qué está aprendiendo inglés?*
- *¿Qué desea lograr con sus aptitudes de inglés?*

El escribir por qué está aprendiendo inglés le dará una razón específica para permanecer en el curso. Le dará motivación y dirigirá sus esfuerzos para aprender. Una meta de inglés también le ayudará a medir y evaluar su progreso hacia ella.

Dedique un momento para escribir su meta de inglés a continuación. No se preocupe por tratar de hacerla perfecta. Su meta puede cambiar o volverse más específica con el tiempo. Lo importante es que fije su propia meta y la repase de vez en cuando. El recordar por qué está aprendiendo inglés puede ayudarlo a mantenerse motivado para continuar y completar este curso.

Estoy aprendiendo inglés para poder

To begin this activity the instructor asks learners why they want to learn English and lists the reasons on the board. The instructor could also ask, What are some of the benefits of learning English? Then the instructor assigns learners to read the paragraphs above.



How Does This Course Work?

Take turns reading the text below and, as a class, answer the discussion questions.

Túrnense para leer el texto de a continuación y, como clase, responder las preguntas de análisis.

This course is designed to give you a weekly English practice session, guided by an instructor. This will help you gain confidence about the lesson materials. Class time will also help you hear proper pronunciation and let you ask questions you may have about what is in the lesson. These guided practices will be the basis of your learning throughout the week.

Most of your learning will occur between classes, when you are expected to review and practice the material covered in class. You are also expected to preview upcoming lesson materials. Working on your English between classes will help you memorize vocabulary, remember what you learn, and prepare to speak English. Thus, studying in between classes will be key to your success in learning English.

Discuss: How will class time help you learn English?

Discuss: Why is it so important to regularly practice English in between classes?

Este curso está diseñado para ofrecerle una sesión práctica de inglés a la semana con la guía de un instructor. Eso le ayudará a ganar confianza sobre los materiales de la lección. El tiempo en clase también le ayudará a escuchar la pronunciación adecuada y le permitirá hacer preguntas que pueda tener sobre la lección. Estas prácticas guiadas serán la base de su aprendizaje durante toda la semana.

La mayor parte del aprendizaje ocurrirá entre una clase y otra, cuando se espera que usted repase y practique el material tratado en clase. También se espera que vea de antemano los próximos materiales de la lección. El trabajar en su inglés entre una clase y otra le ayudará a memorizar el vocabulario, recordar lo que aprendió y prepararse para hablar inglés. Así, el estudiar entre una clase y otra será clave para que tenga éxito al aprender inglés.

Analice: ¿Cómo el tiempo en la clase le ayudará a aprender inglés?

Analice: ¿Por qué es importante que practique inglés con regularidad entre una clase y otra?

Instructors make sure that discussions are not skipped and that learners have time to think about and discuss those items.



How Can You Learn?

Take turns reading the text below.

Túrnense para leer el texto a continuación.

Because most of your learning will be done outside class, it is critical that you establish regular times, places, and ways in which to study. You will need to be consistent in these study habits. You will also need to learn to use your *Learn English Now* book as a foundation for your learning.

*Debido a que la mayoría de su aprendizaje se hará fuera de la clase, es esencial que establezca horarios, lugares y maneras regulares en las que estudiará. Necesitará ser constante en esos hábitos de estudio. También necesitará aprender a usar el manual *Learn English Now* como base para su aprendizaje.*



Learn by Setting Times to Study

Take turns reading the text. Complete the activities below.

Túrnense para leer el texto. Complete las actividades a continuación.

Have you ever said, "I'll do it later," and ended up not doing what you said you would?

Compare this to when you had to do something with a set deadline and you set up a specific time to complete the task.

Discuss in small groups: What role did having a set time to do and complete the task play in completing it?

Setting consistent times to study and practice English will be a great help in your English learning. It is preferable for you to choose study times when you are rested and unlikely to be interrupted.

Discuss in small groups: What are good times for you to study and practice speaking English? Discuss the question with your group and then write down a few study times that will work for you.

¿Alguna vez ha dicho: "Lo haré más tarde" y terminó no haciendo lo que dijo que haría?

Compare esto a cuando tuvo algo que hacer con una fecha límite y estableció un tiempo específico para completar la tarea.

Analizar en grupos pequeños: ¿Qué función tenía el tener un tiempo establecido para hacer y completar la tarea en llegar a completarla?

El establecer horarios constantes para estudiar y practicar inglés será una gran ayuda en su aprendizaje de inglés. Es preferible que elija horarios de estudio cuando esté descansado y sea poco probable que lo interrumpen.

Analizar en grupos pequeños: ¿Cuál es un buen horario para que estudie y practique inglés? Analice la pregunta con su grupo y luego escriba unos cuantos horarios de estudio que le funcionarán a usted.

STUDY TIMES

Instructors may assign learners to groups of 3 to 5. Assistant instructors may also help divide the learners into these small groups.



Learn by Finding Appropriate Places to Study

Take turns reading the text. Complete the activities below.

Túrnense para leer el texto. Complete las actividades a continuación.

Finding appropriate places to study will help you learn. Typically, appropriate places are well-lit, clean, and quiet. Avoid places in which you are likely to be distracted.

Discuss in small groups: What are good places for you to study and practice speaking English? Write down a few ideas for study places that will work for you.

El encontrar lugares apropiados para estudiar le ayudará a aprender. Normalmente, los lugares apropiados tienen buena iluminación, son limpios y tranquilos. Evite lugares en los cuales sea probable que lo distraigan.

Analizar en grupos pequeños: ¿Cuáles son buenos lugares para que estudie y practique inglés? Escriba unas cuantas ideas sobre los lugares de estudio que le funcionarán a usted.

STUDY PLACES

After small groups have discussed the question and learners have written down their ideas, instructors regroup everyone as a class. Then the instructor asks if any learners would be willing to share the times and places they have selected to study.



Learn by Identifying and Applying Ways to Study

Take turns reading the text below.

Túrnense para leer el texto a continuación.

As a class, discuss:

- How do you typically learn a new word and what it means?
- How do you typically review and memorize new information (names, addresses, work-related processes or terms, etc.)?
- What other methods do you know that help you to review and memorize new information?
- What resources help you review, memorize, or practice new information (pen and paper, apps, family, friends, etc.)?
- What role does practicing a new word or skill play in learning it? Feel free to share a brief example.

Learning English is very similar to the processes you have just described. To speak and converse in English, you must identify methods that help you to memorize, review, and practice English words and conversations.

You should also preview the vocabulary for the next class during your study time. This means that you should read, learn the meaning of, and become familiar with each word. Previewing the next class's vocabulary will help you use class time more effectively. It will allow you to focus on listening and practicing the new words and on learning related vocabulary presented in the class.

List methods and resources that can help you review, practice, and preview class materials outside class.

Como clase, analicen:

- *Por lo general, ¿cómo aprenden una palabra nueva y su significado?*
- *Por lo general, ¿cómo repasan y memorizan información nueva (nombres, direcciones, términos relacionados al trabajo, etc.)?*
- *¿Qué otros métodos conocen que les ayudan a repasar y memorizar información nueva?*
- *¿Qué recursos les ayudan a repasar, memorizar o practicar información nueva (bolígrafo y papel, aplicaciones, familia, amigos, etc.)?*
- *¿Qué función tiene el practicar una palabra o habilidad nueva a fin de aprenderla? Siéntase libre de compartir este ejemplo breve.*

Aprender inglés es muy similar a los procesos que acaba de describir. Para hablar y conversar en inglés, debe reconocer métodos que le ayuden a memorizar, repasar y practicar palabras y conversaciones en inglés.

También debe ver de antemano el vocabulario para la próxima clase durante su tiempo de estudio. Eso significa que debe leer cada palabra, aprender su significado y familiarizarse con ella. El ver de antemano el vocabulario de la próxima clase le ayudará a utilizar el tiempo en clase más eficazmente. Le permitirá centrarse en escuchar y practicar las palabras nuevas y en aprender el vocabulario relacionado que se presente en clase.

Enumere los métodos y recursos que pueden ayudarle a repasar, practicar y ver de antemano los materiales de clase fuera de ella.

STUDY METHODS AND RESOURCES



Learn by Using the *Learn English Now* Book

Take turns reading the text below.

Túrnense para leer el texto a continuación.

This book will be the foundation for your learning. It contains activities for each lesson and other helpful resources. To make the most out of this book:

- Bring it to class each week.
- Take notes in this book.
- Complete the activities in this book.

Este manual será la base de su aprendizaje. Contiene actividades para cada lección y otros recursos útiles. Para aprovechar al máximo este manual:

- *Tráigalo a clase cada semana.*
- *Tome notas en el manual.*
- *Complete las actividades del manual.*



My English Practice Plan

Take turns reading the text below.

Túrnense para leer el texto a continuación.

The *Learn English Now* course suggests that you practice English for 10 hours every week. This book includes My English Practice Plan to help you track how you practice English and the time you spend doing so. Turn to My English Practice Plan (pages vi–ix) to see how you can divide your hours among the different practice activities. You should record your practice time in this plan each week.

Discuss: How can you make sure you keep track of your weekly English practice?

En el curso Learn English Now se sugiere que practique inglés durante 10 horas cada semana. En este manual se incluye Mi plan de prácticas de inglés para ayudarle a hacer un seguimiento de cómo usted practique inglés y el tiempo que se pase haciéndolo. Vaya a Mi plan de prácticas de inglés (páginas VI a IX) para ver cómo puede dividir sus horas entre las distintas actividades de práctica. Debe registrar el tiempo de práctica en este plan cada semana.

Analice: ¿Cómo puede asegurarse de hacer un seguimiento de su práctica de inglés cada semana?

Instructors have learners turn to My English Practice Plan. As the class goes through the different columns of the table, instructors incorporate previous comments about how to study that apply to different columns. For example, if someone has said, “Use flashcards to remember words,” then the instructor could mention this when the class talks about “Review Vocabulary from Last Class.”



Other English Practice

Take turns reading the text below.

Túrnense para leer el texto a continuación.

My English Practice Plan includes “Other English Practice.”

Discuss: What could “Other English Practice” include?

Discuss this question with your group and then write down a few ideas in the spaces provided below.

Mi plan de prácticas de inglés incluye “Otras prácticas de inglés”.

Analice: ¿Qué podría incluir en “Otras prácticas de inglés”?

Analice la pregunta con su grupo y luego escriba algunas ideas en los espacios que se ofrecen a continuación.

OTHER ENGLISH PRACTICE



Take turns reading the text below.

Túrnense para leer el texto a continuación.

Learning a new language is a process that requires time, patience, and persistence. You may experience hard times, bad weeks, and a sense of failure. You might feel like you have too much to do and that the mountain you are climbing is too steep. However, remember that "to climb the steepest part of the mountain, we approach it one step at a time" (Mary N. Cook, "Never, Never, Never Give Up!" *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2010, 118).

Remember your goal and stay on course. Be optimistic and do the very best you can. Your efforts will pay off, and little by little you will reach your goal.

El aprender un nuevo idioma es un proceso que requiere tiempo, paciencia y perseverancia. Puede que tenga momentos difíciles, semanas malas y sentimientos de fracaso. Quizás sienta que tiene mucho que hacer y que la montaña que está escalando es muy empinada. Sin embargo, recuerde que "... a fin de avanzar en la parte más empinada de la montaña, enfrentamos nuestro objetivo un paso a la vez" (Mary N. Cook, "¡Nunca, nunca, nunca se den por vencidas!", Liahona, mayo de 2010, pág. 118).

Recuerde su meta y no se desvíe. Sea optimista y haga lo mejor que pueda. Sus esfuerzos darán frutos y poco a poco alcanzará su meta.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.

	Dialog	Diálogo
David:	Hello. What is your name?	<i>Hola. ¿Cómo se llama?</i>
Ana:	Hi. My name is Ana.	<i>Hola Me llamo Ana.</i>
David:	Could you spell that, please?	<i>¿Podría deletrearlo, por favor?</i>
Ana:	Ana, A-N-A.	<i>Ana, A-N-A.</i>
David:	Could you repeat that, please?	<i>¿Podría repetirlo, por favor?</i>
Ana:	A-N-A.	<i>A-N-A.</i>
David:	Thank you!	<i>¡Gracias!</i>

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.



Pronunciation Practice (the alphabet: letters A through M)

Práctica de pronunciación (el alfabeto: letras A hasta la M)

Say each letter aloud.

Diga cada letra en voz alta.

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii Jj Kk Ll Mm

Instructors say each letter correctly and have students repeat it as a class. Then separate learners into small groups and have them repeat each letter correctly with the help of assistant instructors.



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

David: Hello. _____ is your name?

Ana: Hi. My _____ is Ana.

David: Could you spell that, please?

Ana: Ana, _____ - N- _____

David: Could you repeat that, please?

Ana: _____ - N - _____

David: Thank you!



Pronunciation Practice (the alphabet: letters N through Z)

Práctica de pronunciación (el alfabeto: letras N hasta la Z)

Say each letter aloud.

Diga cada letra en voz alta.

Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr Ss Tt Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

Instructors say each letter correctly and have students repeat it as a class. Then separate learners into small groups and have them repeat each letter correctly with the help of assistant instructors.



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

1. How do you spell the name Ana?
2. How do you spell the name David?
3. How do you spell the name Kevin?
4. How do you spell your name?

Instructors ask the question and wait for each learner to respond correctly. Instructors help learners with their pronunciation as needed.

Module 1

PRONUNCIATION

Pronunciation

1

(3 classes with subsequent regular review until pronunciation is good)



Objectives
Objetivos



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. recognize some vowel sounds.
- ☐ 2. say words in English correctly.
- ☐ 3. ask questions politely.

There are several sounds in English that are not commonly used in many other languages. Our goal is to help improve pronunciation. We are teaching learners to recognize and then be able to pronounce these unique sounds using simple words. Do not worry about the meanings of the words at this time.

Hay varios sonidos en inglés que no se usan con frecuencia en muchos otros idiomas. Nuestra meta es ayudar a mejorar la pronunciación. Enseñamos a los alumnos a reconocer y luego a ser capaces de pronunciar esos sonidos inusuales usando palabras sencillas. En este punto, no se preocupe por el significado de las palabras.

Vowels



Short *a*

(In each class session, practice **slowly**, 2 lines only, for a maximum of 5 minutes.)



bat

cat

fat

hat

rat



dad

bad

had

mad

sad



jam

am

ham

Sam

lamb



can

an

man

pan

ran



hand

and

land

sand

band



cast

fast

last

past

mast



class

brass

pass

mass

sass



Short *e*

(In each class session, practice **slowly**, 2 lines only, for a maximum of 5 minutes.)



bed

fed

Jed

led

red



pen

Ben

end

hen

send



dress

bless

guess

less

press



jet

get

let

met

pet



vest

test

west

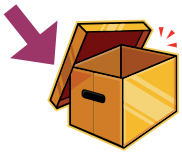
rest

nest



Short *i*

(In each class session, practice **slowly**, 2 lines only, for a maximum of 5 minutes.)



lid

bid

did

hid

kid



win

bin

fin

pin

tin



lip

dip

hip

tip

ship



pig

big

dig

fig

wig



sick

kick

lick

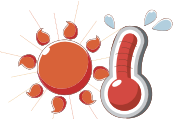
pick

stick



Short *o*

(In each class session, practice **slowly**, 2 lines only, for a maximum of 5 minutes.)



hot

dot

got

lot

not



mop

top

hop

pop

shop



rob

Bob

mob

job

knob



mom

bomb

Tom

.com

prom



toss

boss

loss

moss

Ross



Short *u*

(In each class session, practice **slowly**, 2 lines only, for a maximum of 5 minutes.)



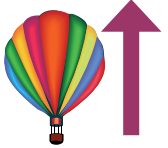
bug

mug

rug

jug

dug



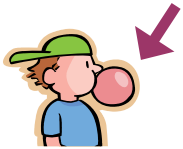
up

cup

pup

sup

yup



gum

hum

dumb

sum

yum



cut

but

gut

mutt

rut



run

bun

fun

gun

sun

Consonants



F f

(In each class session, practice **slowly** for a maximum of 2 minutes.)



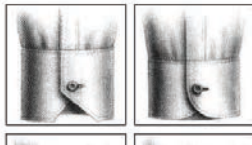
4

four

Frank

fun

face



cuff

puff

if



V v

(In each class session, practice **slowly** for a maximum of 2 minutes.)



vacation

Victor

vote

van



cave

give

have

Dave



R r

(In each class session, practice **slowly** for a maximum of 2 minutes.)



read

red

ran

rule

rate



letter

father

mother

sister

brother



S s

(In each class session, practice **slowly** for a maximum of 2 minutes.)



stop

Samuel

school

start



dogs

kiss

pass

cats



Th th

(In each class session, practice **slowly** for a maximum of 2 minutes.)



3

three

there

the

this



math

bath

path

birth



Z z

(In each class session, practice **slowly** for a maximum of 2 minutes.)



zap

zone



his

years

Give time for learners to complete with help from an assistant instructor.

cut •

cut



can

three •

three

4

can •

can



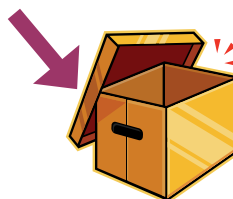
dress •

dress



cast •

cast



stop •

stop



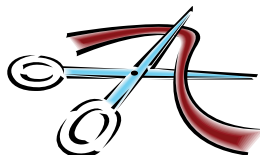
lid •

lid

3

four •

face



vest •

vest



run •

run



toss •

toss



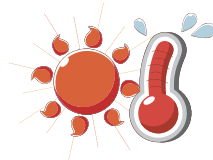
win •

win



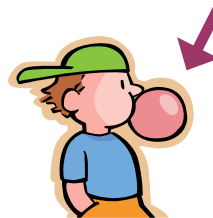
mom •

mom



jam •

jam



gum •

gum



hot •

hot



bat •

bat



bug •

bug



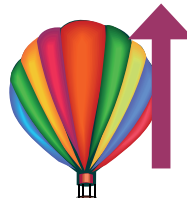
pig •

pig



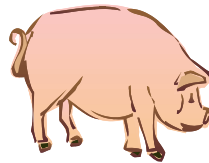
jet •

jet



class •

class



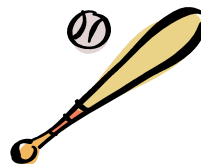
up •

up



bed •

bed



dad •

dad



sick •

sick



pen •

pen



rob •

rob



read •

read



letter •

letter



lip •

lip



mop •

mop



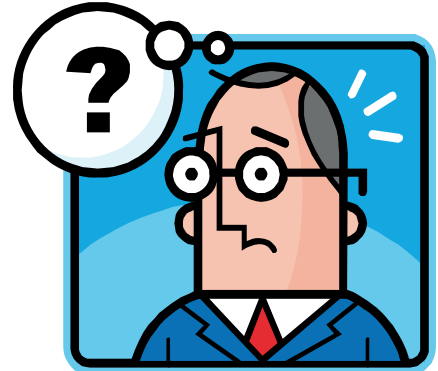
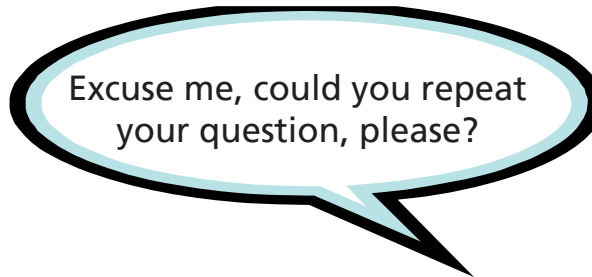
hand •

hand





Ask the person to repeat something.

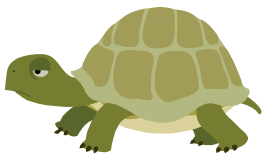


Disculpe, ¿podría repetir la pregunta, por favor?

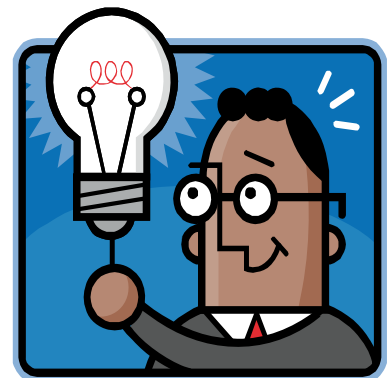


¿Podría repetirlo, por favor?

Ask the person to speak slower.



¿Podría hablar más despacio, por favor?





Language Focus: Could You . . . Please?

Notice that many of the phrases begin with the words *Could you* and end with the word *please*. This is a polite way of asking someone to do something for you.

Fill in the blanks below with these polite words: (*Could* and *Please*)

1. _____ repeat your question, _____?
2. _____ repeat that _____?
3. _____ speak slower, _____?



Example Conversation *Ejemplo de conversación*



Nancy: Could you get me a pen, please?

Lucas: Excuse me, could you repeat your question, please?

Nancy: Could you get me a pen, please?

Lucas: Thanks, now I understand better. Here it is.

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box(es) on the solid lines. Fold the dialog on the dotted line and practice the English sentences to memorize them. You can use the other side of the card to help you understand the meaning of the dialog.

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Recorte el(los) recuadro(s) en las líneas continuas. Doble el diálogo en la línea punteada y practique las oraciones en inglés para memorizarlas. Puede usar el otro lado de la tarjeta para que le ayude a entender el significado del diálogo.

Card 1A

<u>Phrases</u>		
Excuse me, could you repeat your question, please?		<i>Disculpe, ¿podría repetir la pregunta, por favor?</i>
Would you speak slower, please?		<i>¿Podría hablar más despacio, por favor?</i>
<u>Dialog</u>		
Nancy:	Can you get me a pen, please?	<i>¿Me puede conseguir un bolígrafo, por favor?</i>
Lucas:	Excuse me, could you please repeat your question?	<i>Disculpe, ¿podría por favor repetir la pregunta?</i>
Nancy:	Can you get me a pen, please?	<i>¿Me puede conseguir un bolígrafo, por favor?</i>
Lucas:	Thanks, now I understand better. Here it is.	<i>Gracias, ahora entiendo mejor. Aquí tiene.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Cards

Cut out the box(es) on the solid lines. Fold the lists on the dotted lines and practice until you know the vocabulary, grammar, and proper pronunciation. You can use the other columns of the card to help you understand the meaning of the words.

Tarjetas plegables de vocabulario

Recorte el(los) recuadro(s) en las líneas continuas. Doble las listas en las líneas punteadas y practique hasta que sepa el vocabulario, la gramática y la pronunciación adecuada. Puede usar las otras columnas de la tarjeta para que le ayuden a entender el significado de las palabras.

Card 1B

<u>Vowel Sounds</u>				
Short o				
hot	dot	got	lot	pot
mop	top	hop	pop	shop
rob	Bob	mob	job	knob
mom	bomb	Tom	prom	.com
toss	boss	loss	moss	Ross
Short u				
bug	mug	rug	jug	dug
up	cup	pup	sup	yup
gum	hum	dumb	sum	yum
cut	but	gut	mutt	rut
run	bun	fun	gun	sun
Short a				
bat	cat	fat	hat	rat
dad	bad	had	mad	sad
can	an	man	pan	ran
jam	am	ham	Sam	lamb
hand	and	land	sand	band
cast	fast	last	past	mast
class	brass	pass	mass	sass

Card 1C

Vowel Sounds

Short *e*

bed	fed	Jed	ld	red
pen	Ben	end	hen	send
dress	bless	guess	yes	press
jet	get	let	met	pet
vest	test	west	rest	nest

Short *i*

lid	bid	did	hid	kid
win	bin	fin	pin	tin
lip	dip	hip	tip	ship
pig	big	dig	fig	wig
sick	stick	kick	lick	pick

Consonant Sounds

<i>f</i>	Frank	four	fun	face
	cuff	puff	if	
<i>v</i>	vacation	Victor	vote	van
	cave	give	have	Dave
<i>r</i>	red	ran	rule	rate
	father	mother	sister	brother
<i>s</i>	Samuel	stop	school	start
	dogs	kiss	pass	cats
<i>th</i>	three	there	the	this
	math	bath	path	birth
<i>z</i>	zap	zone	his	years

Module 2

INTRODUCTORY VOCABULARY

ACTING OUT VERB CONJUGATIONS WITH GESTURES

It is very important that all instructors model and regularly use this gesture practice.

Learn and use gestures for the persons and tense conjugation practice. Learners, you should learn and use in the first or at least by the end of the second class the gestures for the persons of "I" (point to self with both hands), "You" (reach out in front of you with one hand open faced and up), "We" (reach both arms and hands in front in an inclusive gesture, "They" (stretch both hands out in front with both hands facing a group of people), "He" (point sideways with hand face down towards a man), "She" (point sideways with hand face down towards a woman), and "It" (point down toward an imaginary cat or dog). As you, the learner, learn the tenses, do so giving the gestures. Put your books down and make the same gestures as the instructor and assistant instructors while you give the appropriate responses. This is very important, so you internalize the communication as your own. Soon, when you hear a simple sentence pattern such as "I write the letter," you will be able to repeat the phrase and then change the verb appropriately when seeing the gesture for "You" or "We" or "They" or "He" or "She" or "It." This is very effective and helps you retain your learning. Remember that a class or train or any singular thing (other than a person) is an "It," but that two "It"s require the conjugation for "They."

HACER UNA DEMOSTRACIÓN DE LAS CONJUGACIONES DE LOS VERBOS USANDO GESTOS

Aprendan y usen los gestos para la práctica de las personas y la conjugación de los tiempos. Alumnos, deben aprender y usar en la primera clase o al menos al final de la segunda clase los gestos para las personas de "Yo" (señálense a ustedes mismo con ambas manos), "Usted" (extiendan una mano frente a ustedes, con la palma abierta y en alto), "Nosotros" (extiendan al frente los dos brazos y las dos manos en un gesto de inclusión), "Ellos" (extiendan ambas manos al frente con la palma hacia un grupo de personas), "Él" (señalen de lado a un hombre con la palma de la mano hacia abajo), "Ella" (señalen de lado a una mujer con la palma de la mano hacia abajo) e "It" (señalen hacia abajo hacia un perro o gato imaginario). Conforme usted, el alumno, aprende estos tiempos, hágalo usando los gestos. Ponga los libros a un lado y haga los mismos gestos como los hacen el instructor y los instructores auxiliares mientras usted da las respuestas adecuadas. Esto es muy importante para que asimile la comunicación como la suya misma. Pronto, cuando escuche un modelo de oración sencilla como "I write the letter", podrá repetir la frase y luego cambiar el verbo adecuadamente al ver el gesto para "You" o "We" o "They" o "He" o "She" o "It". Eso resulta muy eficaz y le ayuda a retener su conocimiento. Recuerde que una clase o un tren o cualquier cosa (que no sea una persona) es un "It", pero que dos "It" requieren la conjugación de "They".

Introductory Vocabulary

2

(3 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives *Objetivos*

At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. identify different parts of speech in English.
- ☐ 2. name the days of the week and months of the year.
- ☐ 3. name the different times of the day.
- ☐ 4. place adjectives in the correct order.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que repitan las palabras hasta que las puedan pronunciar bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.
Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Camilla:	Do you know which days we have our English classes?	<i>¿Sabes qué días tenemos clases de inglés?</i>
Ben:	Yes, they are on Tuesday and Thursday evenings.	<i>Sí, son los martes y jueves por la noche.</i>
Camilla:	What time do they begin?	<i>¿A qué hora comienzan?</i>
Ben:	They begin at 7:00 p.m. and end at 8:30 p.m.	<i>Comienzan a las 7:00 p.m. y terminan a las 8:30 p.m.</i>
Camilla:	What month do they begin?	<i>¿En qué mes comienzan?</i>
Ben:	In September, September 1 [first].	<i>En septiembre, el 1º [primero] de septiembre.</i>
Camilla:	Thank you. Do you also know what time church services start on Sunday?	<i>Gracias. ¿Sabes también a qué hora empiezan los servicios de la Iglesia los domingos?</i>
Ben:	Yes, they start at 9:00 a.m. every week and last until 12:00 noon.	<i>Sí, empiezan a las 9:00 a.m. todas las semanas y duran hasta las 12:00 del mediodía.</i>



Pronunciation Practice
Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly. <i>Escuche y repita despacio.</i>		Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds. <i>Complete las letras que falten y haga los sonidos.</i>		
j-	<u>J</u> anuary, <u>J</u> une, <u>J</u> uly	<u> </u> anuary	<u> </u> une	<u> </u> uly
y-	<u>y</u> es, <u>y</u> esterday, <u>y</u> ear, <u>y</u> ou	<u> </u> es	<u> </u> esterday	<u> </u> ear
-end	<u>b</u> end, <u>s</u> end, <u>l</u> end	<u>b</u> _____	<u>s</u> _____	<u>l</u> _____
-ay	<u>b</u> ay, <u>s</u> ay, <u>M</u> ay	<u>b</u> _____	<u>s</u> _____	<u>M</u> _____
d-	<u>d</u> o, <u>d</u> ay, <u>D</u> ecember	<u> </u> o	<u> </u> ay	<u> </u> ecember



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

<u>Word</u>	<u>Rhyming Words</u>				
day	say	lay	May	way	pay
start	art	dart	cart	chart	
time	dime	rhyme	crime	lime	chime
week	meek	leak	peek	seek	weak

Teach: "Where two vowels go walking, usually the first vowel does the talking."

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir con palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| evening • | • begin |
| time • | • finish |
| start • | • each |
| every • | • night |
| morning • | • hour |
| end • | • a.m. |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

evening

night



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Write the words in pencil. Also, pronounce them with your assistant instructor.

Escriba las palabras con lápiz. Además, pronúncielas con el instructor auxiliar.

Dialog Words

evening
time
start
every
morning
end

Writing Practice

Related Words

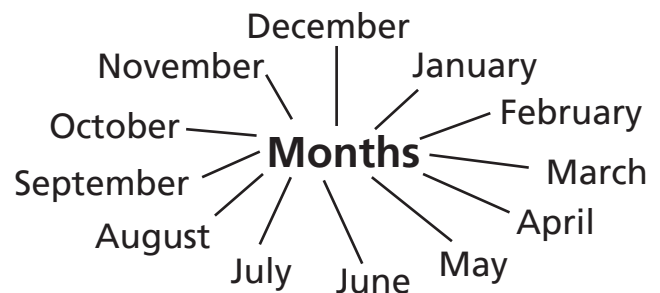
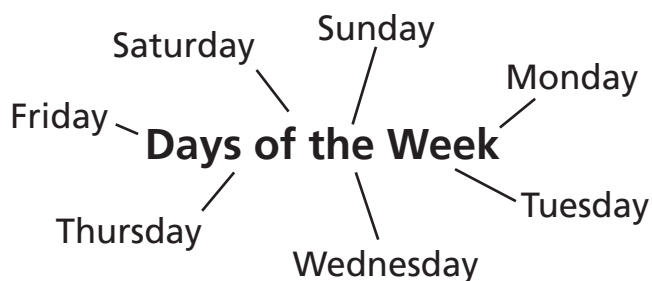
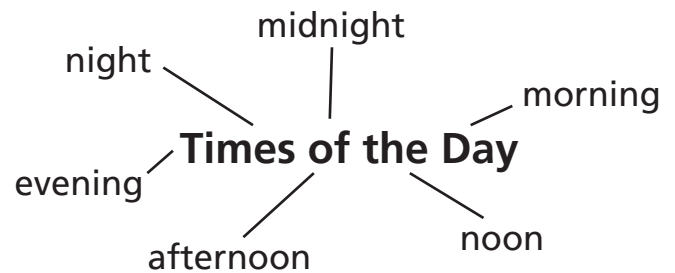
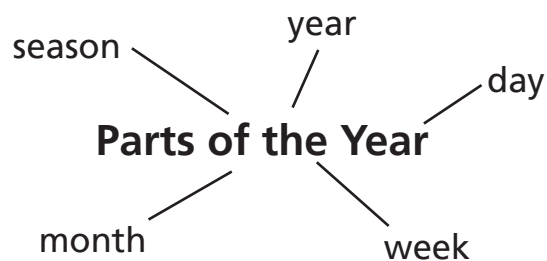
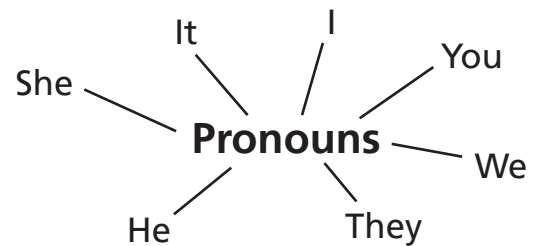
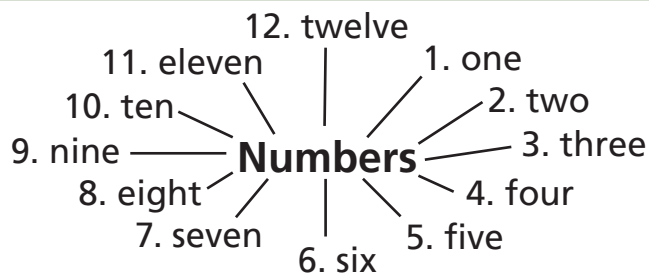
night
hour
begin
each
a.m.
finish

Writing Practice



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.
Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

- Camilla: Do you _____ which _____ we have our English classes?
- Ben: Yes, they are on _____ and Thursday evenings.
- Camilla: What _____ do they begin?
- Ben: They begin at 7:00 p.m. and _____ at 8:30 p.m.
- Camilla: What _____ do they begin?
- Ben: In September, _____.
- Camilla: _____. Do you also know what time church services start on _____?
- Ben: Yes, they _____ at 9:00 a.m. _____ week and last until 12:00 noon.



From the dialog, circle the correct word.
Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta.

Write the complete sentence in pencil.
Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. Do you (now / know) what days we have our English classes?
2. Yes, they are (on / an) Tuesday and Friday evenings.
3. What (time / tame) are they?
4. They start at 7:00 p.m. (an / and) end at 8:30 p.m.
5. What (moth / month) do they begin?
6. In January, next (hear / year), January 3rd.
7. (Thank / Tank) you. Do you also know what time church services start on Sunday?
8. Yes, they start at 9:00 a. m. (every / ever) week and last until 12:00 noon.

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.
 Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

What days are the English classes?	<u>They are on</u>
What time are the classes?	<u>They start at</u>
What month do they begin?	<u>They begin in</u>
What day do they begin?	<u>They begin on</u>
What time does church start?	<u>It starts at</u>



Language Focus: Days of the Week



Days of the Week						
Weekend	Weekdays					Weekend
Sunday <i>Domingo</i>	Monday <i>Lunes</i>	Tuesday <i>Martes</i>	Wednesday <i>Miércoles</i>	Thursday <i>Jueves</i>	Friday <i>Viernes</i>	Saturday <i>Sábado</i>
1 day before yesterday <i>anteayer</i>	2 yesterday <i>ayer</i>	3 today <i>hoy</i>	4 tomorrow <i>mañana</i>	5 day after tomorrow <i>pasado mañana</i>	6	7

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.

Write the correct name of the day in the blanks.

Escriba el nombre correcto del día en los espacios en blanco.

- Today is Tuesday, so tomorrow is _____ and yesterday was _____.
- Today is Friday, so tomorrow is _____ and yesterday was _____.
- Today is Thursday, so tomorrow is _____ and yesterday was _____.
- Today is Sunday, so tomorrow is _____ and yesterday was _____.
- Today is Wednesday, so tomorrow is _____ and yesterday was _____.
- Today is Monday, so tomorrow is _____ and yesterday was _____.
- Today is Saturday, so tomorrow is _____ and yesterday was _____.
- On _____, we go to church.



Practice writing and saying the months of the year.

Practique escribir y decir los meses del año.

- | | | | |
|-----|-----------|------------|----------------|
| 1. | January | Enero | <u>January</u> |
| 2. | February | Febrero | |
| 3. | March | Marzo | |
| 4. | April | Abril | |
| 5. | May | Mayo | |
| 6. | June | Junio | |
| 7. | July | Julio | |
| 8. | August | Agosto | |
| 9. | September | Septiembre | |
| 10. | October | Octubre | |
| 11. | November | Noviembre | |
| 12. | December | Diciembre | |

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.

Write the correct name of the month in the blanks.

Escriba el nombre correcto del mes en los espacios en blanco.

1. Last month was _____ .
2. This month is _____ .
3. Next month is _____ .
4. This month is July. Next month is _____ .
5. This month is May. Last month was _____ .
6. Next month is December. This month is _____ .
7. Last month was March. This month is _____ .
8. Christmas is in _____ .
9. The 1st month of the year is _____ .
10. The 7th month of the year is _____ .
11. Valentine's Day is in _____ .
12. The 3rd month of the year is _____ .
13. The 9th month of the year is _____ .
14. In what month is your birthday? My birthday is in _____ .

Word Key:

last	<i>pasado</i>
this	<i>este</i>
next	<i>próximo</i>



Instructor and assistant instructors ask questions, and learners answer in full sentences.



Nouns

(Sustantivos)

Persons (Personas)

instructor

sister

Camilla

The instructor is nice.

Places (Lugares)

school

lake

Utah

I see a car.

Things (Cosas)

pencil

car

idea

Camilla walks to school.

A noun is often preceded by the word *a* or *an*, but not always.

(*A menudo un sustantivo va precedido de la palabra a o an, pero no siempre*).

Personal Pronouns

replace the names with pronouns

(reemplace los nombres con los pronombres)



I You We They He She It

He is a instructor.

They read a book.

Camilla and I like ice cream.

Adjectives

describe nouns

(*Los adjetivos describen a los sustantivos*).

blue

pretty

funny

good

I see a blue car.

The instructor is nice.

Adjectives usually come before the noun or after a "to be" verb (*am, are, is*).

(*Por lo general los adjetivos van antes del sustantivo o después de una forma del verbo "to be" [am, are, is]*).

Verbs

show an action

(*Los verbos demuestran acción*).

read

walk

talk

run

I walk to school.

Camilla reads a book.

Change the verb based on the noun or pronoun subject. Add -s for *he, she, and it* subjects.

(*Cambie el verbo basándose en el sustantivo o pronombre del sujeto. Agregue -s para los sujetos he, she o it*).



A. Circle the nouns in the sentences below.

Trace un círculo alrededor de los sustantivos en las oraciones siguientes.

1. The pig is pink.
2. A jet is big.
3. The bug is small.
4. It is a green apple.
5. My sister and mom are nice.

Write the nouns on the line.

Escriba los sustantivos en el renglón.

B. Circle the pronouns in the sentences below.

Trace un círculo alrededor de los pronombres en las oraciones siguientes.

1. We are happy.
2. She has a bag.
3. They walk to school.
4. He goes to class.
5. You are a learner.

Write the pronouns on the line.

Escriba los pronombres en el renglón.

C. Circle the verbs in the sentences below.

Trace un círculo alrededor de los verbos en las oraciones siguientes.

1. She is a instructor.
2. I am happy.
3. They like to read.
4. Ben goes to class. He is a learner.
5. Camilla and I go to school. We are learners.

Write the verbs on the line.

Escriba los verbos en el renglón.

D. Circle the adjectives in the sentences below.

Trace un círculo alrededor de los adjetivos en las oraciones siguientes.

1. She is a happy instructor.
2. It is my blue pencil.
3. The pig is pink.
4. The food is good.
5. The big jet is nice.

Write the adjectives on the line.

Escriba los adjetivos en el renglón.



Language Focus: Basic Sentence Structure

The basic structure of a sentence, unless it is a question, is often:

La estructura básica de una oración, a menos que sea una pregunta, es a menudo:

Subject	Verb	Adjective			
He	is	tired.			
Subject	Verb	Adverb	Adjective		
He	is	very	tired.		
Subject	Verb	Adjective	Noun		
I	throw	the	ball.		
Subject	Verb	Adjective	Adjective	Noun	
I	want	some	good	fruit.	
Subject	Adverb	Verb	Adjective	Adjective	Noun
I	really	want	some	good	fruit.

Remember: In English, we always use a name, noun, or personal pronoun before the verb.

En inglés, siempre usamos un nombre, un sustantivo o un pronombre personal antes del verbo.



Language Focus: Adjectives

In English, the adjectives usually come before a noun. Look at the examples below.

En inglés, por lo general los adjetivos van antes del sustantivo. Veamos los ejemplos a continuación.

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Noun</u>	<u>Pronoun</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Noun</u>
1. <u>good</u>	fruit	4. It	is	<u>a cold</u>	day.
2. <u>large</u>	ball	5. We	have	<u>a brown</u>	table.
3. <u>happy</u>	children	6. They	are	<u>tired</u>	learners.

Draw a line between one adjective and one noun. Then write the words in the correct order.

<u>Adjective</u>		<u>Noun</u>		<u>Write in Correct Order</u>
green	verde	window	ventana	<u>glass window</u>
old	viejo/anciano/antiguo	book	libro	
glass	vidrio	instructor	instructor	
tall	alto	building	edificio	

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Language Focus: Saying the Date

To say the year, divide the number as two numbers.

Para decir el año, divídalo en dos números.

1920 → 19 | 20
 "nineteen twenty"



1716 seventeen sixteen 2000* two thousand

1820 eighteen twenty 2003* two thousand (and) three

1904 nineteen o four 2012 twenty twelve or two thousand twelve

1986 nineteen eighty-six 2014 twenty fourteen or two thousand fourteen

*Do not divide the numbers for the years 2000–2009.

Practice writing and saying the years.

Practique escribir y decir los años.

2004 two thousand four

2011

2018

1945

1976

1856

2015

To say the date, use the ordinal number for the day and the cardinal number (see above) for the year.

Example: Written: Today is January 3, 2015. Spoken: "Today is January third, two thousand fifteen."

Practice writing and saying the dates below.

March 11, 2014 Today is March eleventh, two thousand fourteen.

May 18, 2013 Today is

July 21, 2014 Today is

September 1, 2014 Today is

October 22, 2014 Today is

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words.

When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

Instructors explain the meaning and then demonstrate and get repetition.

Los maestros explican el significado, luego hacen una demostración y piden que se repita.



- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. When is the class?
Every Tuesday at 7:00 p.m. | 2. Classes begin next month.
Great! I'm excited! |
| 3. Is church in the morning or the afternoon?
It's* in the morning at 9:00 a.m. | 4. What time do classes end?
At 8:30 p.m. |

*It's is the shortened form of it is.



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Instructors explain the meaning and then demonstrate and get repetition.

Los maestros explican el significado, luego hacen una demostración y piden que se repita.



- | | |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Expression: | I can't wait! |
| Meaning: | I'm very excited! |
| Example: | I can't wait for class to start! |
| Meaning: | I'm very excited for class to start! |



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

February	<i>Febrero</i>	August	<i>Agosto</i>
March	<i>Marzo</i>	September	<i>Septiembre</i>
April	<i>Abril</i>	October	<i>Octubre</i>
May	<i>Mayo</i>	November	<i>Noviembre</i>
June	<i>Junio</i>	December	<i>Diciembre</i>
July	<i>Julio</i>		

Instructors explain the significance of cognates and demonstrate pronunciation.

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box(es) on the solid lines. Fold the dialog on the dotted line and practice the English sentences to memorize them. You can use the other side of the card to help you understand the meaning of the dialog.

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Recorte el(los) recuadro(s) en las líneas continuas. Doble el diálogo en la línea punteada y practique las oraciones en inglés para memorizarlas. Puede usar el otro lado de la tarjeta para que le ayude a entender el significado del diálogo.

Card 2A

Module 2	Dialog	Diálogo
Camilla:	Do you know which days we have our English classes?	<i>¿Sabes qué días tenemos clases de inglés?</i>
Ben:	Yes, they are on Tuesday and Thursday evenings.	<i>Sí, son los martes y jueves por la noche.</i>
Camilla:	What time do they begin?	<i>¿A qué hora comienzan?</i>
Ben:	They start at 7:00 p.m. and end at 8:30 p.m.	<i>Empiezan a las 7:00 p.m. y terminan a las 8:30 p.m.</i>
Camilla:	What month do they begin?	<i>¿En qué mes comienzan?</i>
Ben:	In September, September 1 (first).	<i>En septiembre, el 1º (primero) de septiembre.</i>
Camilla:	Thank you. Do you also know what time church services start on Sunday?	<i>Gracias. ¿Sabes también a qué hora empiezan los servicios de la Iglesia los domingos?</i>
Ben:	Yes, they start at 9:00 a.m. every week and last until 12:00 p.m. (noon).	<i>Sí, empiezan a las 9:00 a.m. todas las semanas y duran hasta las 12:00 (del mediodía).</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box(es) on the solid lines. Fold the lists on the dotted lines and practice until you know the vocabulary, grammar, and proper pronunciation. You can use the other columns of the card to help you understand the meaning of the words.

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Recorte el(los) recuadro(s) en las líneas continuas. Doble las listas en las líneas punteadas y practique hasta que sepa el vocabulario, la gramática y la pronunciación adecuada. Puede usar las otras columnas de la tarjeta para que le ayuden a entender el significado de las palabras.

Card 2B

Cardinal			Ordinal		
1	one	<i>uno</i>	1st	first	<i>primero</i>
2	two	<i>dos</i>	2nd	second	<i>segundo</i>
3	three	<i>tres</i>	3rd	third	<i>tercero</i>
4	four	<i>cuatro</i>	4th	fourth	<i>cuarto</i>
5	five	<i>cinco</i>	5th	fifth	<i>quinto</i>
6	six	<i>seis</i>	6th	sixth	<i>sexto</i>
7	seven	<i>siete</i>	7th	seventh	<i>séptimo</i>
8	eight	<i>ocho</i>	8th	eighth	<i>octavo</i>
9	nine	<i>nueve</i>	9th	ninth	<i>noveno</i>
10	ten	<i>diez</i>	10th	tenth	<i>décimo</i>

Card 2C

Cardinal			Cardinal		
11	eleven	<i>once</i>	22	twenty-two	<i>veintidós</i>
12	twelve	<i>doce</i>	23	twenty-three	<i>veintitrés</i>
13	thirteen	<i>trece</i>	24	twenty-four	<i>veinticuatro</i>
14	fourteen	<i>catorce</i>	25	twenty-five	<i>veinticinco</i>
15	fifteen	<i>quince</i>	26	twenty-six	<i>veintiséis</i>
16	sixteen	<i>dieciséis</i>	27	twenty-seven	<i>veintisiete</i>
17	seventeen	<i>diecisiete</i>	28	twenty-eight	<i>veintiocho</i>
18	eighteen	<i>dieciocho</i>	29	twenty-nine	<i>veintinueve</i>
19	nineteen	<i>diecinueve</i>	30	thirty	<i>treinta</i>
20	twenty	<i>veinte</i>	31	thirty-one	<i>treinta y uno</i>
21	twenty-one	<i>veintiuno</i>			

Module 3

GREETINGS AND INTRODUCTIONS

Greetings and Introductions

3

Present Tense

(4 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives

Objetivos



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. ask and answer simple questions.
- ☐ 2. greet others and make introductions.
- ☐ 3. use the verb **to be**.
- ☐ 4. create sentences using common English verbs.

The instructor and assistants, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then, they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que repitan las palabras hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
John:	Good morning, Sharon. How are you?	Buenos días, Sharon. ¿Cómo estás?
Sharon:	I am fine, and you?	Estoy bien, ¿y tú?
John:	Great! This is my new friend, Sam.	¡Excelente! Él es Sam, mi nuevo amigo.
Sharon:	I am pleased to meet you.	Un placer conocerte.
Sam:	It is nice to meet you, Sharon.	Un gusto conocerte, Sharon.

Assistant instructors help intermediate learners write and participate in greetings in various settings (for example: school, church, workplace, supermarket).



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

-oo-	<u>good, hood, wood</u>
gr-	<u>great, grand, grow</u>
sh-	<u>Sharon, shoe, show</u>
-ing	<u>morning, evening, being</u>
y-	<u>you, your, yes</u>
-end	<u>friend, send, bend</u>
a	<u>Sam, hat, man</u>
ee	<u>meet, feet, need</u>
-ew	<u>new, blew, crew</u>

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que falten y haga los sonidos.

g_____	h_____	w_____
_____eat	_____and	_____ow
_____aron	_____oe	_____ow
morn_____	even_____	be_____
_____ou	_____our	_____es
fri_____	s_____	b_____
S_____	h_____	m_____
m_____	f_____	n_____
n_____	bl_____	cr_____



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Listen, repeat, and write.

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

good morning

I

fine

great

friend

I'm

pleased

to meet

nice

my

this (person)

Writing Practice

Related Words

hello

me

well

very good

companion

I am

happy

to know

good

belongs to me

that

Writing Practice

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When correct, teach them to the other learners in your group.



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

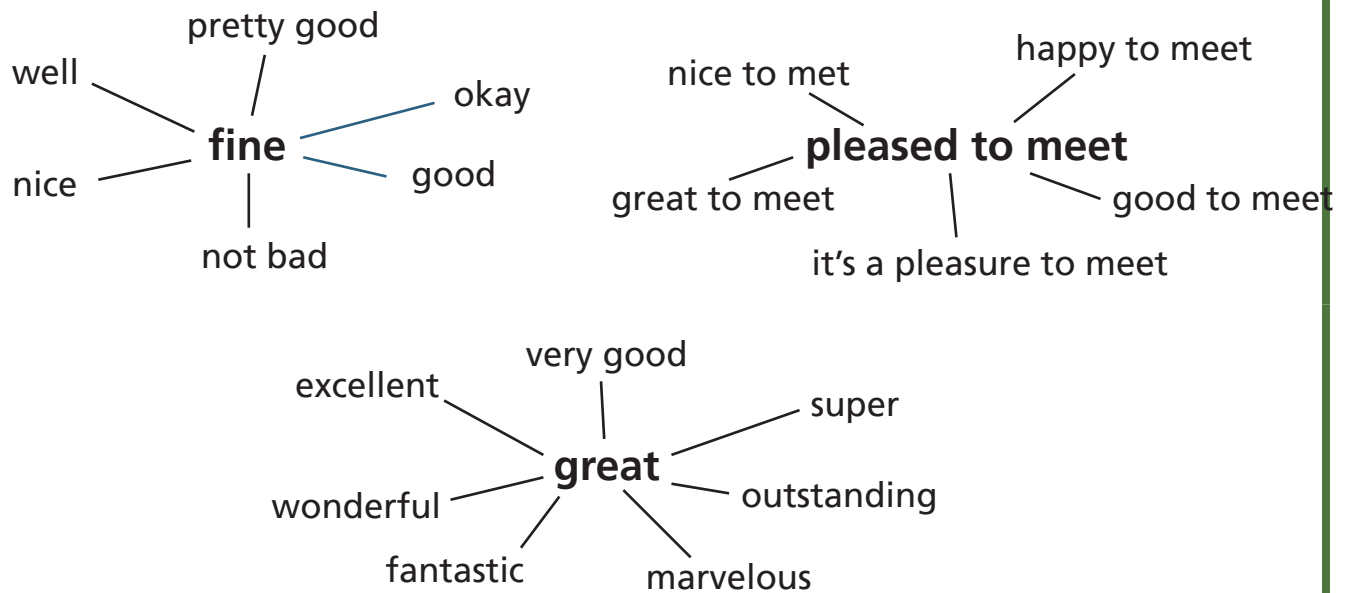
Escuche y repita despacio.

<u>Word</u>	<u>Rhyming Words</u>					
good	hood	wood	stood	should	would	could
fine	dine	line	mine	nine	pine	wine
and	band	brand	hand	land	sand	stand
meet	beet	feet	sweet	tweet	sheet	street
nice	dice	lice	price	mice	rice	twice



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir con palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| good morning • | • well |
| I'm • | • hello |
| fine • | • good |
| great • | • to know |
| my • | • I am |
| friend • | • happy |
| I • | • belongs to me |
| pleased • | • very well |
| to meet • | • me |
| nice • | • buddy |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

good morning

hello



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que faltan del diálogo.

- John: Good _____, Sharon. _____ are you?
- Sharon: I _____ fine, and _____?
- John: Great! This _____ my new friend, Sam.
- Sharon: I am _____ to meet _____.
- Sam: It is nice _____ you, Sharon.



Intermediate Challenge

Prepare a written conversation with someone you meet at Church.

Prepare una conversación por escrito con alguien que conoció en la Iglesia.



From the dialog, circle the correct word.

Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta.

Write the complete sentence in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. (God / Good) morning.
2. How (are / or) you?
3. I'm (find / fine), and (you / your)?
4. (Grate / Great) ! (This / These) is my new friend.
5. I am pleased to (meet / meat) you.
8. It is (niece / nice) to meet (your / you), Sharon.

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Write and say this sentence in English.



John
*Usted es John y la persona
que habla*



Sam



Sharon



I am John.



You are Sam.



She is Sharon.



He is Sam.



They are Sharon and Sam.
(She + He = **They**)

She

He



We are John and Sam.
(I + You = **We**)

I

you

Assistant instructors help learners write and say these sentences. When a learner can say the sentences correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.

<u>Person</u>	<u>Conjugation</u>	<u>Sample Sentence</u>
I	am	I am happy.
You / We / They	are	We are cold.
He / She / It	is	He is early.



I am = I'm

He is = he's

You are = you're

She is = she's

We are = we're

It is = it's

They are = they're



Follow the short format above to create simple sentences. Practice saying your sentences.

Siga el breve formato anterior para crear oraciones sencillas. Practique leer sus oraciones.

Person

Conjugate to be

Adjective

I am I am happy.

You

He

She

It

We

They

Assistant instructors help learners create sentences using other vocabulary. An example could be, "I am sad." Encourage them to write and say sentences for other words such as tired, late, bored, busy, angry, hungry, funny, serious, and so on.



Language Focus: Reduced Questions and Answers (Contractions)



Long Question <i>Pregunta larga</i>	Reduced Question <i>Pregunta reducida</i>	Long Answer <i>Respuesta larga</i>	Reduced Answer <i>Respuesta reducida</i>
How are you?	How're you?*	I am fine.	I'm fine.
How is your dad?	How's your dad?	He is fine.	He's fine.
How is he?	How's he?	He is fine.	He's fine.
How is she?	How's she?	She is fine.	She's fine.
How is it?	How's it?	It is fine.	It's fine.
How are you?	How're you?*	We are fine.	We're fine.
How are they?	How're they?*	They are fine.	They're fine.

* It is spoken as "How're" but it is generally written as "How are."

Se dice "How're", pero por lo general se escribe "How are".

Fill in the missing words using **am**, **is**, or **are**.

Complete las palabras que faltan con **am**, **is** o **are**.

I am fine.

1. He _____ fine.
2. They _____ fine.
3. She _____ okay.
4. How _____ you?
5. She _____ here today.
6. He _____ my friend.
7. It _____ okay.
8. I _____ pleased to meet you.
9. We _____ fine.
10. You _____ pleased.

Fill in the missing words using **I'm**, **You're**, **He's**, **She's**, **We're**, or **They're**.

Complete las palabras que faltan con **I'm**, **You're**, **He's**, **She's**, **We're** o **They're**.

I'm fine.

- _____ fine.
- _____ fine.
- _____ okay.
- _____ you?
- _____ here today.
- _____ my friend.
- _____ okay.
- _____ pleased to meet you.
- _____ fine.
- _____ pleased.



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog



- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. How are things going?
Pretty well, thank you. | 2. Hello, I'm Mary.
Glad to meet you. |
| 3. Who is your friend?
His/her name is _____ | 4. Where are you from?
I'm from Arizona. |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo



- | | | |
|----|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. | Expression | Good morning. |
| | Meaning | a way to greet someone. |
| | Examples | Good afternoon, Good evening. Hello. Hi. How are you? |
| 2. | Expression | It's my pleasure. |
| | Meaning | something nice that you like |
| | Examples | It's a pleasure for me. |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Verb	I / You / We / They	He / She / It	Write the correct verb form.	
Regular verbs	Drop the <i>to</i>	Drop the <i>to</i> and add <i>s</i>		
1. to answer	I answer him.	He answers right away.	She _____	correctly.
2. to arrive	I arrive on time.	He arrives late.	He _____	with me.
3. to ask	I ask for a lot.	He asks a question.	We _____	him again.
4. to begin	I begin today.	He begins late.	He _____	class this week.
5. to believe	I believe him.	He believes you.	She _____	it.
6. to bring	I bring food.	He brings books.	She _____	a friend.
7. to call	I call regularly.	He calls every night.	We _____	him on the phone.
8. to come	I come later.	He comes tonight.	We _____	home.
9. to drink	I drink water.	He drinks milk.	We _____	the soda.
10. to eat	I eat a lot.	He eats well.	He _____	everything.
11. to feel	I feel good.	He feels bad.	She _____	something soft.
12. to find	I find rocks.	He finds lost coins.	He _____	the address.
13. to get	I get tired.	He gets busy.	She _____	a bonus.
14. to give	I give donations.	He gives him a dollar.	He _____	it away.
15. to have (irr.)	I have homework.	He has too much work.	She _____	to study.
16. to hear	I hear something.	He hears a noise.	You _____	the song.
17. to help	I help with school.	He helps his friend.	We _____	everyone.
18. to invite	I invite them.	He invites him.	We _____	everybody.
19. to know	I know the way.	He knows English.	We _____	the problem.
20. to laugh	I laugh a lot.	He laughs at the joke.	She _____	all the time.
21. to learn	I learn English.	He learns a lot in class	We _____	the verbs.
22. to leave	I leave late.	He leaves early.	They _____	at noon.
23. to like	I like the food.	He likes the dinner.	He _____	the class.
24. to listen	I listen in class.	He listens carefully.	They _____	to the instructor.
25. to look	I look tired.	He looks right at him.	He _____	crazy.
26. to love	I love the book.	He loves the music.	They _____	learning
27. to make	I make dinner.	He makes it home.	She _____	a cake.
28. to meet	I meet friends.	He meets often.	They _____	each other.
29. to need	I need some food.	He needs to work.	They _____	to run.
30. to read	I read books.	He reads all night.	He _____	the book.
31. to remember	I remember him.	She remembers to call.	They _____	the lessons.
32. to repeat	I repeat out loud.	He repeats the dialog.	She _____	the vocabulary.

33.	to say	I say it out loud.	He says it in English.	She	_____	they can go.
34.	to see	I see him tonight.	He sees her go.	She	_____	the accident.
35.	to sing	I sing in the choir.	He sings the song.	They	_____	well.
36.	to speak	I speak English.	He speaks Spanish.	He	_____	at Church.
37.	to spell	I spell the verbs.	He spells the word right.	He	_____	the word wrong.
38.	to stay	I stay until Friday.	He stays the night.	They	_____	too long.
39.	to take	I take him home.	He takes a long time.	She	_____	her book along.
40.	to talk	I talk too much.	He talks for an hour.	She	_____	during class.
41.	to tell	I tell him.	She tells stories.	We	_____	jokes.
42.	to think	I think too much.	He thinks a lot about it.	He	_____	about his mother.
43.	to understand	I understand well.	He understands the class.	We	_____	her English.
44.	to visit	I visit relatives.	She visits her grandmother.	He	_____	his grandmother.
45.	to walk	I walk a lot.	He walks for exercise.	We	_____	all day.
46.	to want	I want to come.	He wants to rest.	They	_____	to learn English.
47.	to work	I work every day.	He works too hard.	She	_____	on Saturday.
48.	to write	I write books.	He writes a letter.	She	_____	well.

**Verbs ending in
o, s, sh, ch, or x**

Drop the to

Drop the to and add es

49.	to do	I do their work.	He does their assignment.	They	_____	well.
50.	to go	I go early today.	He goes until 5:00 p.m.	She	_____	home.
51.	to cash	I cash the check.	He cashes the check.	He	_____	the check.
52.	to finish	I finish late.	He finishes early.	You	_____	on time.
53.	to teach	I teach English.	He teaches classes.	You	_____	well.
54.	to watch	I watch baseball.	He watches TV	We	_____	the game.

Verbs ending in y

Drop the to

Drop the to, change y to i, add es

55.	to cry	I cry for help.	He cries a lot.	I	_____	at night.
56.	to fly	I fly here today.	He flies a kite.	We	_____	to New York.
57.	to study	I study every day.	He studies for each test.	They	_____	all weekend.
58.	to try	I try every day.	He tries hard.	You	_____	to learn Spanish.

Irregular verbs

Drop the to and memorize irregular verbs

59	to be	I am busy.	He is a good learner.	We	_____	good learners.
60	to be able to	I am able to eat.	He is able to read.	They	_____	able to speak well.
.	can (alternate)	I can do it.	He can run fast.	You	_____	work hard.

Instructors read the sentences and ask the learners to read them together with the instructor.
Act some of these out with role-playing.



Instructors ask questions of the learners, motioning whether the question is to a you, we, they, he, or she. Learners respond. Instructors model a sentence for the learners that uses one of the verbs correctly conjugated based on the subject selected. Then learners create short questions and sentences and write them below. Instructors and assistant instructors correct the written work. Then learners share with other class members their questions and sentences, using correct gestures.



Present Tense—Sentence Practice

At School or Class

Optional Pronouns

(I/You/We/They/He/She/It)

I

I

You / We / They

He / She

Verb conjugations

(answer, arrive, come, go, help, learn, like, listen, speak, read, spell, talk, think, walk, write, study)

walk

Optional Prepositional Phrases

(before class, to class, in class, during class, after class, before school, to school, in school)

to class

Several learners write on the board where the activity is projected, or on a separate page, and say sentences using various subjects, proper conjugations, and appropriate prepositional phrases. After a learner says a proper sentence with good pronunciation, the rest of the class says the same sentence. Instructors help learners practice proper pronunciation.

60 Common Verbs Flash Fold Cards

Cut out card and fold on dotted lines.

Card 3A

Infinitive	Translation	I / You / We / They	He / She / It
1. to answer	<i>contestar</i>	answer	answers
2. to arrive	<i>llegar</i>	arrive	arrives
3. to ask	<i>preguntar/pedir</i>	ask	asks
4. to begin	<i>comenzar/empezar</i>	begin	begins
5. to believe	<i>creer</i>	believe	believes
6. to bring	<i>traer</i>	bring	brings
7. to call	<i>llamar</i>	call	calls
8. to come	<i>venir</i>	come	comes
9. to drink	<i>tomar/beber</i>	drink	drinks
10. to eat	<i>comer</i>	eat	eats
11. to feel	<i>sentir</i>	feel	feels
12. to find	<i>encontrar</i>	find	finds
13. to get	<i>obtener</i>	get	gets
14. to give	<i>dar</i>	give	gives
15. to have	<i>tener</i>	have	has
16. to hear	<i>oír</i>	hear	hears
17. to help	<i>ayudar</i>	help	helps
18. to invite	<i>invitar</i>	invite	invites
19. to know	<i>saber</i>	know	knows
20. to laugh	<i>reír</i>	laugh	laughs
21. to learn	<i>aprender</i>	learn	learns
22. to leave	<i>salir</i>	leave	leaves
23. to like	<i>gustar</i>	like	likes
24. to listen	<i>escuchar</i>	listen	listens
25. to look	<i>mirar</i>	look	looks
26. to love	<i>amar</i>	love	loves
27. to make	<i>hacer</i>	make	makes
28. to meet	<i>conocer</i>	meet	meets
29. to need	<i>necesitar</i>	need	needs
30. to read	<i>leer</i>	read	reads

60 Common Verbs Flash Fold Cards

Cut out card and fold on dotted lines.

Card 3B

Infinitive	Translation	I / You / We / They	He / She / It
31. to remember	<i>recordar</i>	remember	remembers
32. to repeat	<i>repetir</i>	repeat	repeats
33. to say	<i>decir</i>	say	says
34. to see	<i>ver</i>	see	sees
35. to sing	<i>cantar</i>	sing	sings
36. to speak	<i>hablar</i>	speak	speaks
37. to spell	<i>deletrear</i>	spell	spells
38. to stay	<i>quedar(se)</i>	stay	stays
39. to take	<i>tomar</i>	take	takes
40. to talk	<i>hablar/conversar</i>	talk	talks
41. to tell	<i>decir/contar</i>	tell	tells
42. to think	<i>pensar</i>	think	thinks
43. to understand	<i>entender/comprender</i>	understand	understands
44. to visit	<i>visitar</i>	visit	visits
45. to walk	<i>caminar</i>	walk	walks
46. to want	<i>querer</i>	want	wants
47. to work	<i>trabajar</i>	work	works
48. to write	<i>escribir</i>	write	writes
49. to do	<i>hacer</i>	do	does
50. to go	<i>ir</i>	go	goes
51. to cash	<i>cobrar</i>	cash	cashes
52. to finish	<i>terminar</i>	finish	finishes
53. to teach	<i>enseñar</i>	teach	teaches
54. to watch	<i>mirar</i>	watch	watches
55. to cry	<i>llorar</i>	cry	cries
56. to fly	<i>volar</i>	fly	flies
57. to study	<i>estudiar</i>	study	studies
58. to try	<i>tratar/intentar</i>	try	tries
59. to be	<i>ser/estar</i>	I am You/We/They are	is
60. to be able to	<i>ser capaz de</i>	I am able to You/We/They are able to	is able to
(can)	<i>(poder)</i>	can	can

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box on the solid lines. Fold the dialog on the dotted line and practice the English sentences to memorize them. You can use the other side of the card to help you understand the meaning of the dialog.

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Recorte el recuadro en las líneas continuas. Doble el diálogo en la línea punteada y practique las oraciones en inglés para memorizarlas. Puede usar el otro lado de la tarjeta para que le ayude a entender el significado del diálogo.

Card 3C

Module 3	Dialog	<i>Diálogo</i>
John:	Good morning, Sharon. How are you?	<i>Buenos días, Sharon. ¿Cómo estás?</i>
Sharon:	I am fine, and you?	<i>Estoy bien, ¿y tú?</i>
John:	Great! This is my new friend, Sam.	<i>¡Excelente! Él es Sam, mi nuevo amigo.</i>
Sharon:	I am pleased to meet you.	<i>Un placer conocerte.</i>
Sam:	It is nice to meet you, Sharon.	<i>Un gusto conocerte, Sharon.</i>

Module 4

DIRECTIONS INSIDE A BUILDING

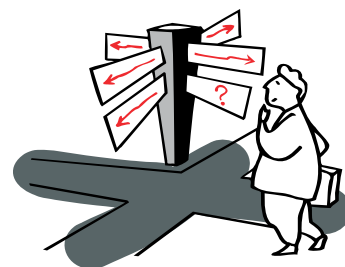
Directions inside a Building

4

(3 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives
Objetivos



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. ask directions inside a building.
- ☐ 2. ask questions using **what, when, where, who, which, and how.**
- ☐ 3. ask "to do" questions.
- ☐ 4. use the contraction **don't.**

The instructor, assistant instructors, and English speakers at home help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog to the learners. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo a los alumnos. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que repitan las palabras hasta que las puedan pronunciar bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Laura:	Hi, pardon me. Where is the class?	<i>Hola, disculpe. ¿Dónde es la clase?</i>
Jerry:	It's up the stairs, straight down the hall, and to the left.	<i>Está subiendo las escaleras, recto por el corredor y a la izquierda.</i>
Laura:	Which door?	<i>¿En qué puerta?</i>
Jerry:	The fifth one.	<i>En la quinta.</i>
Laura:	When does it start?	<i>¿Cuándo empieza?</i>
Jerry:	Right now, at ten o'clock.	<i>Ahora mismo, a las 10 en punto.</i>
Laura:	Do I need anything for class today?	<i>¿Necesito algo para la clase hoy?</i>
Jerry:	No, I don't think so.	<i>No, no lo creo.</i>
Laura:	Who is the instructor?	<i>¿Quién es el instructor?</i>
Jerry:	Mr. Kimball.	<i>El Sr. Kimball.</i>
Laura:	Excuse me, please. I have to get to class. Thanks.	<i>Discúlpeme, por favor. Debo ir a clase. Gracias.</i>
Jerry:	You're welcome. Please go ahead.	<i>De nada. Adelante, por favor.</i>

Instructors can find additional practice content for giving directions in Module 9, Directions Outside, and Module 19, Final Resource Materials.



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

w- with, without, welcome
 wh- when, where, why, which
 wh- who, whole
 th- thanks, thin, think
 -s* excuse, please, is, does
 h- hi, hall, how, ahead
 -t left, right, start, what
 d- down, door, does, do
 -ll hall, Kimball, tall, ball

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

____ith ____ithout ____elcome
 ____en ____ere ____y
 ____o ____ole
 ____anks ____in ____ink
 excu____e plea____e doe____
 ____all ____ow a____ead
 lef____ righ____ star____
 ____own ____oor ____oes
 ha____ ta____ ba____

*When a vowel comes before the s at the end of the word, the s sounds like a z.



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

Word	Rhyming Words					
hall	wall	tall	call	mall	ball	fall
start	part	art	cart	dart		
class	pass	mass	gas	grass		
think	drink	ink	sink	link	pink	
me	be	she	we	he		
need	deed	feed	seed	heed	weed	
do	to					
is	his					



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir con palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| pardon me • | • believe |
| right now • | • no |
| you're welcome • | • excuse me |
| think • | • immediately |
| start • | • begin |
| nope • | • good-bye |
| hi • | • something |
| first • | • window |
| nothing • | • no problem |
| door • | • place |
| where • | • time |
| when • | • second |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

Pardon me

Excuse me

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Listen, repeat, and write

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

pardon me
right now
you're welcome
think
start
nope
hi
first
nothing
door
where
when

Writing Practice

Related Words

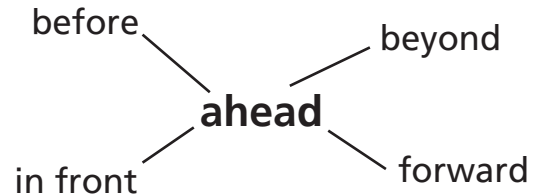
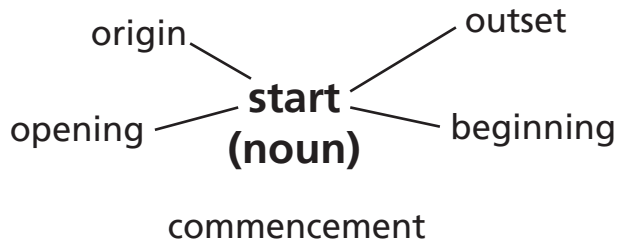
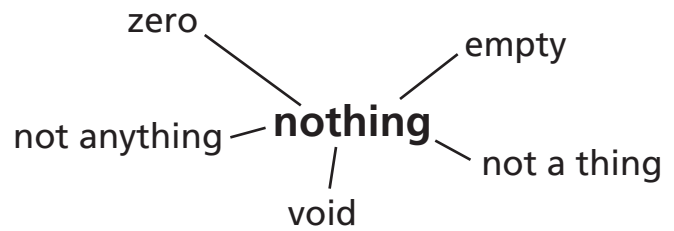
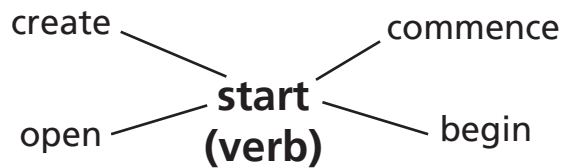
excuse me
immediately
no problem
believe
begin
no
good-bye
second
something
window
place
time

Writing Practice



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.
Complete con lápiz las palabras que faltan del diálogo.

Laura: Hi, _____ me. Where is the class?

Jerry: It's _____ the _____, _____ the hall and to the left.

Laura: _____ door?

Jerry: The _____ one.

Laura: When does it _____?

Jerry: Right _____, at ten _____.

Laura: Do I need _____ for class today?

Jerry: _____, I don't think so.

Laura: Who is the _____?

Jerry: Mr. Kimball.

Laura: Excuse me, _____. I have to _____ to class.
_____.

Jerry: You're welcome. Please _____.



From the dialog, circle the correct word. Write the complete sentence in pencil.

Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta. Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. Where (as / is) the class?
It's straight down the hall (two /
2. to / too) the right.
3. When (does / do) it start?
4. What (does / do) I need?
5. (Whom / Who) is the instructor?
6. Excuse (my / me), please.

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Instructors create a diagram of the inside of a building or use the diagram on the back of this page (distribute copies or display it on a screen). Instructors describe how to go into the building, up or down stairs, down a hall, and to a particular room. Then they ask volunteers to give directions on how to arrive at different places.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.

Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

Where is the class?

Which door?

When does it start?

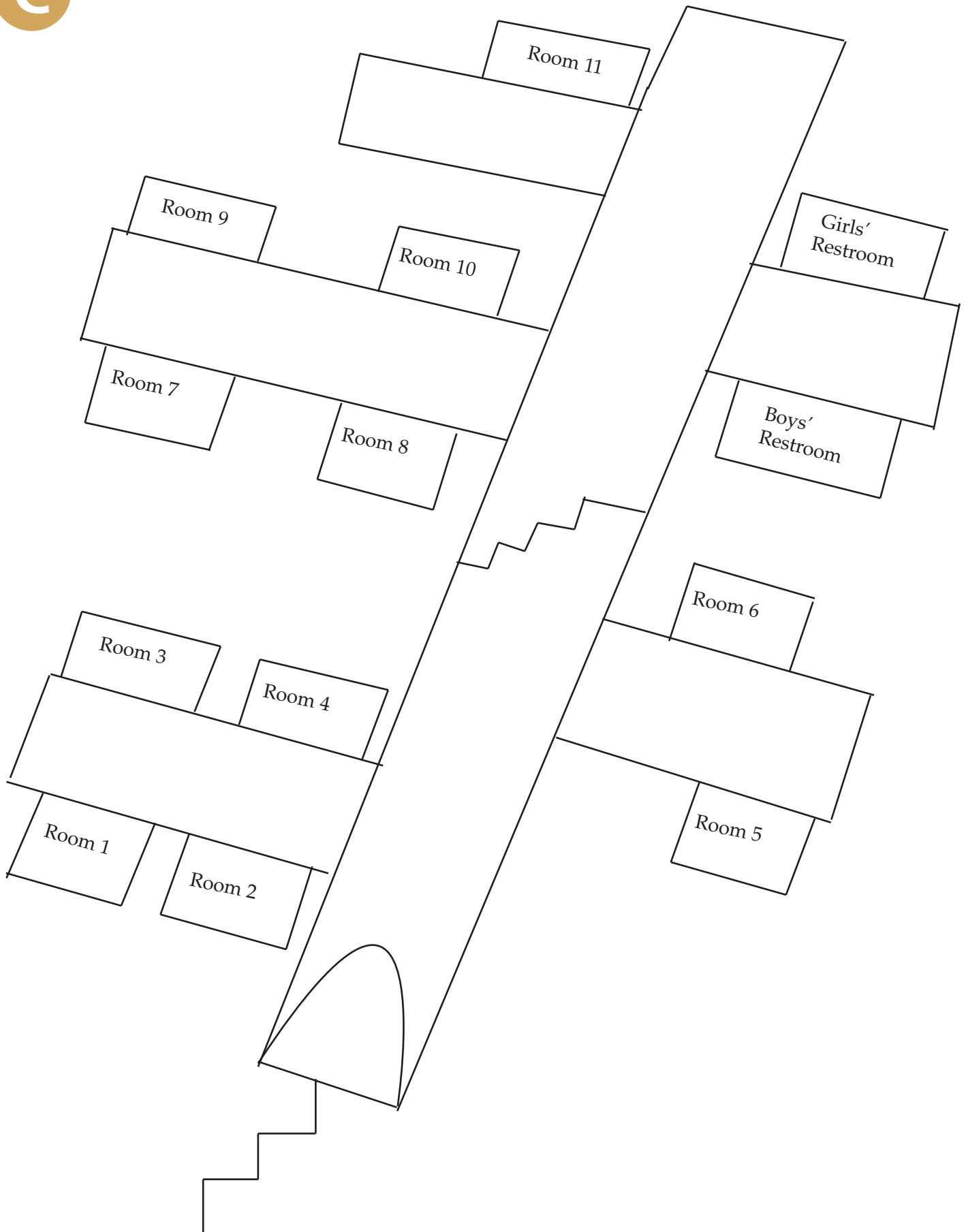
What do I need?

Who is the instructor?

Excuse me, please. Where is the restroom?



Directions inside a School





Language Focus: 60 Common Verbs

Instructors use the Module 3 language focus for the 60 common verbs. They read the sentences and ask the learners to read with them. Instructors and learners can role-play by showing the action of the verb and motioning to oneself for **I**, to a man for **he**, a woman for **she**, to two people for **they**, and all as a group for **we**. Use gestures for the conjugations. Encourage the learners to create some of their own sentences to share.



Language Focus: *Wh-* and *How* Questions

<i>Wh-</i> or <i>How</i> Word	What the <i>Wh-</i> or <i>How</i> Word Asks For	
Who? (¿Quién?)	Person	
When? (¿Cuándo?)	Time	
Where? (¿Dónde?)	Place	
Which? (¿Cuál?)	Choice	
Why? (¿Por qué?)	Reason or Explanation	
How? (¿Cómo?)	Process or Condition	
What? (¿Qué?)	Item Description or Explanation	
Question	Answer	What Is Asked For
Who is the instructor?	Mr. Kimball.	Person
What do I need?	Nothing.	Description
When does it start?	At 10:00.	Time
Where is the class?	It's down the hall to the left.	Place
Why are you here?	I'm here to learn English.	Reason
Which door?	The first door.	Choice
How are you?	I'm fine.	Condition

Instructors have the learners practice asking some *Wh-* and *How* questions. The instructors ask some questions and then ask for volunteers to do the same.



Language Focus: *Wh-* and *How* Questions



Find the answer to a question. Then write the correct **wh-** or **how** word for each question and identify the type of information that the question is asking about.

*Encuentre la respuesta a una pregunta. Luego escriba la palabra correcta que empieza con **wh-** o con **how** en cada pregunta y seleccione el tipo de información que se formula en la pregunta.*

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>	<u>What Is Asked for</u>
1. <u>Where</u> is it?	It's down the hall.	<u>place</u>
2. _____ is his name?	His name is Mr. Kimball.	
3. _____ door is it?	The first door.	
4. _____ does it start?	It starts right now.	
5. _____ is he coming?	He's coming today.	
6. _____ is she?	She's fine.	
7. _____ is Joseph?	Joseph is fine.	
8. _____ are you?	We are here.	
9. _____ do you need?	I need a book.	



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog



- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. I think our instructor is Mr. Kimball.

Great! I had him last class. He's really nice.</p> <p>3. Where is our classroom?

It's the second door on the right.</p> | <p>2. What do I need for class today?

Some paper and a pencil.</p> <p>4. How do I get to class?

Go down the hall and turn left.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



- | | | |
|----|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. | Expression: | No problem. |
| | Meaning: | A response to "Thank you" similar to "You're welcome" or "I was happy to help." |
| | Examples: | Thanks for helping me.
No problem. |
| | Meaning: | Thanks for helping me.
You're welcome. I was happy to help. |
| 2. | Expression: | Go ahead. |
| | Meaning: | Do what you want, do what you plan to do. |
| | Examples: | Excuse me. I have to leave.
Go ahead. See you later. |
| | Meaning: | Excuse me. I have to leave.
Okay, you can leave. See you later. |
| 3. | Expression: | I have to run. |
| | Meaning: | I need to leave now. |
| | Examples: | Sorry, I have to run. Bye! |
| | Meaning: | Sorry, I have to leave. Bye! |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



How do you feel?	I feel fine.	I don't (do not) feel well.
When do we have class?	We have class tonight.	We don't have class tonight.
When do you go to bed?	I go to bed at 10:00 pm.	I don't go to bed until 10:00.
Where do you go to school?	I go to Jordan High.	I don't go to school.
Where do you go to church?	I go to church on 7th Street.	I don't go to church.
What sports do you like?	I like soccer.	I don't like sports.
Do you like to swim?	Yes, I like to swim.	No, I don't like to swim.
Do you like to read books?	Yes, I like to read books.	I don't like to read books.
Do you want a glass of water?	Yes, I want some water.	No, I don't want water.
?	:	
?	:	
?	:	
?	:	

At this point it is important for instructors to focus on sentences and questions using to do in the affirmative and in the negative. The negative often involves use of the contraction don't for do not. Take some time to teach the contraction form. The activity includes some examples and space below for the learners to use.

Please note that the learners may not understand or easily create full sentences with correct grammar. Help them learn model sentences and questions that they can use in conversations.

Assistant instructors should help the learners become comfortable using to do in questions and answers.



Present Tense—Sentence Practice

At Work with Supervisor or Co-employees

Pronouns	Verb Conjugations	Optional Prepositional Phrases
(I/You/He/She/It/We/They)	(arrive, come, go, help, learn, listen, speak, talk, teach, think, walk, write, study)	(before work, to work, at work, during work, after work)
I	<u>walk</u>	<u>to work</u>
I		
You/ We/ They		
He/ She		

Have several learners fill in the chart on the board or on a separate page. Have them speak in sentences using various subjects, proper conjugations, and appropriate prepositional phrases. Help them practice proper pronunciation.



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

excuse me	<i>discúlpeme</i>	pardon	<i>perdón</i>
class	<i>clase</i>	student	<i>estudiante</i>

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box on the solid lines. Fold the dialog on the dotted line, and practice the English sentences to memorize them. You can use the other side of the card to help you understand the meaning of the dialog.

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Recorte el recuadro en las líneas continuas. Doble el diálogo en la línea punteada y practique las oraciones en inglés para memorizarlas. Puede usar el otro lado de la tarjeta para que le ayude a entender el significado del diálogo.

Card 4A

Module 4	Dialog	<i>Diálogo</i>
Laura:	Hi, pardon me. Where is the class?	<i>Hola, disculpe. ¿Dónde es la clase?</i>
Jerry:	It's up the stairs, straight down the hall and to the left.	<i>¡Está subiendo las escaleras, recto por el corredor y a la izquierda.</i>
Laura:	Which door?	<i>¿En qué puerta?</i>
Jerry:	The fifth one.	<i>En la quinta.</i>
Laura:	When does it start?	<i>¿Cuándo empieza?</i>
Jerry:	Right now, at ten o'clock.	<i>Ahora mismo, a las 10 en punto.</i>
Laura:	Do I need anything for class today?	<i>¿Necesito algo para la clase hoy?</i>
Jerry:	No, I don't think so.	<i>No, no lo creo.</i>
Laura:	Who is the instructor?	<i>¿Quién es el instructor?</i>
Jerry:	Mr. Kimball.	<i>El Sr. Kimball.</i>
Laura:	Excuse me, please. I have to get to class. Thanks.	<i>Discúlpeme, por favor. Debo ir a clase. Gracias.</i>
Jerry:	You're welcome. Please go ahead.	<i>De nada. Adelante, por favor.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box on the solid lines. Fold the lists on the dotted lines, and practice until you know the vocabulary, grammar, and proper pronunciation. You can use the other columns of the card to help you understand the meaning of the words.

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Recorte el recuadro en las líneas continuas. Doble las listas en las líneas punteadas y practique hasta que sepa el vocabulario, la gramática y la pronunciación adecuada. Puede usar las otras columnas de la tarjeta para que le ayuden a entender el significado de las palabras.

Card 4B



Wh / How ?	Translation	Question	Answers
1. Who?	¿Quién?	Who is the instructor?	Mr. Kimball.
2. When?	¿Cuándo?	When does it start?	At 10:00 p.m.
3. Where?	¿Dónde?	Where is the class?	It's down the hall.
4. Which?	¿Cuál?	Which door?	The second door.
5. Why?	¿Por qué?	Why are you here?	I'm here to learn English.
6. How?	¿Cómo?	How are you?	I'm fine.
7. What?	¿Qué?	What do I need?	Nothing.

Module 5

RESPONSIBILITIES AND ACTIVITIES

Responsibilities and Activities 5

(3 classes with subsequent review)

Objectives *Objetivos*



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. say my responsibilities.
- ☐ 2. use helping verbs + infinitives to say responsibilities, wishes, likes, and needs.
- ☐ 3. create small sentences.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa, ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Son:	What are your responsibilities?	<i>¿Cuáles son tus responsabilidades?</i>
Father:	What do you mean?	<i>¿Qué quieres decir?</i>
Son:	You know, things you have to do, your duties.	<i>Ya sabes, cosas que tienes que hacer, tus tareas.</i>
Father:	Oh, you mean my work and home responsibilities?	<i>Oh, ¿te refieres a mis responsabilidades en el trabajo y en la casa?</i>
Son:	Yes, that's right.	<i>Sí, así es.</i>
Father:	I have to work every day. I also help with the children. I like to play sports and to do hobbies. I also hope to learn English.	<i>Tengo que trabajar todos los días. También ayudo con los hijos. Me gusta jugar deportes y entretenerme con pasatiempos. También espero aprender inglés.</i>
Son:	So some are responsibilities that you have to do, and others are activities that you like to do.	<i>Entonces algunas son responsabilidades que tienes que hacer y otras son actividades que te gusta hacer.</i>
Father:	Yes, I think responsibilities are usually things you have to do.	<i>Sí, creo que las responsabilidades por lo general son cosas que uno tiene que hacer.</i>

P Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

-ea- mean, read, lead
 -ties duties, activities
 -ike like, Mike, hike
 -bby hobby, lobby, Libby
 wh- what, where, when, why
 -o- hope, rope, go, low
 pl- play, please, place

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

m__n r__d l__d
 du__ activi__
 l__ M__ h__
 ho__ lo__ Li__
 __at __ere __en __y
 h__pe r__pe g__ l__w
 __ay __ease __ace

P Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

Word	Rhyming Words					
mean	bean	clean	lean	Dean	Jean	
other	brother	mother	smother			
think	drink	sink	blink	pink	wink	link

V Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir con palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

responsibility •	• hobby
activity •	• action
work •	• must
play •	• assist
have to •	• duty
every •	• correct
help •	• job
right •	• each

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

responsibility duty

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Write the words in pencil. Also, pronounce them with your assistant instructor.

Escriba las palabras con lápiz. Además, pronúncielas con el instructor auxiliar.

Dialog Words

responsibility

activity

work

play

have to

every

help

right

Writing Practice

Related Words

duty

action

job

hobby

must

each

assist

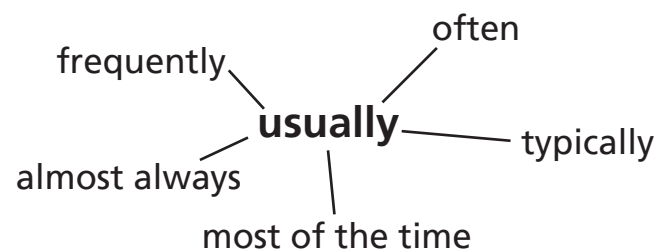
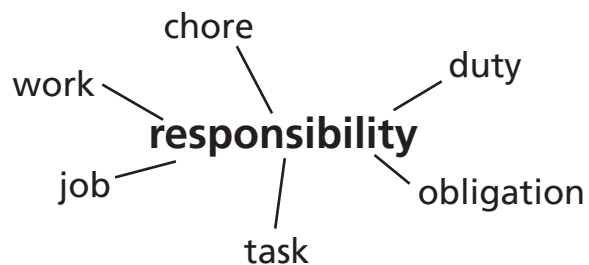
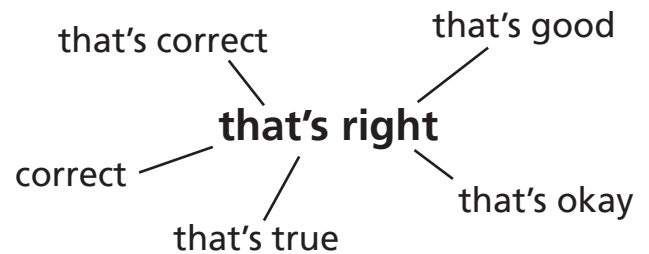
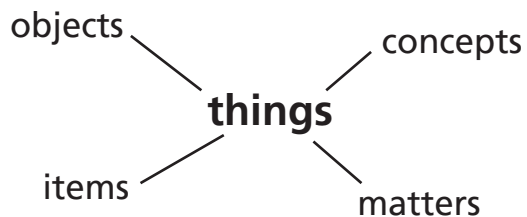
correct

Writing Practice



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Instructors use the Module 3 language focus for the 60 common verbs. They read the sentences and ask the learners to read them together. Role-play by showing the action of the verb and motioning to oneself for I, to a man for he, a woman for she, to two people for they, and all as a group for we. Encourage the learners to create some of their own sentences to share.



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.
Complete con lápiz las palabras que faltan del diálogo.

Son: What are your _____?

Father: What do _____ mean?

Son: You know, _____ you _____, your duties.

Father: Oh, you _____ my _____ and home _____?

Son: Yes, _____ right.

Father: I _____ work every day. I also _____ with the children. I _____ to play sports and to do _____. I also hope to _____ English.

Son: So some are _____ that you have to do, and others are _____ that you like to do.

Father: _____, I think _____ are usually _____ you have to do.



Instructors tell the learners what some of their responsibilities are and then ask the learners to describe in full sentences what their responsibilities are.

>Instructors tell the learners what some of their hobbies are and then ask the learners to describe in full sentences what their hobbies are or what they like to do.

>Role-play with learners by having them act out something that a person has to do as a responsibility or likes to do. Then ask the learners to describe in full sentences as follows:

_____ is one of his responsibilities or _____ likes to _____.



From the dialog, circle the correct word.

Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta.

Write the complete sentence in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. What are (you / your) responsibilities?
2. What do (you / your) mean?
3. You (now / know), things you (have / half) to do, your duties.
4. Oh, you (men / mean) my work (an / and) home responsibilities.
5. Yes, that's (right / write).
6. I have to work every day. I have to help (with / which) the children. I also (lick / like) to play sports, to do hobbies, and I (hop / hope) to learn English.
7. (So / Sew), some (or / are) responsibilities that you have to do, and others are activities (that / those) you like to do.
8. Yes, I (think / thing) responsibilities are things you have to do.

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.

Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

What are your responsibilities? I have to



Have **have +** infinitive verb

I **have** to go.
You **have** to study.
You (all) **have** to study.
We **have** to learn English.
They **have** to practice English.
He/She/It **has** to attend class.

I _____ do the homework.
You _____ attend class.
You (all) _____ go to work.
We _____ study every day.
They _____ read the book.
He/She/It _____ go to the store.



Need **need +** infinitive verb

I **need** to go.
You **need** to study.
You (all) **need** to study.
We **need** to learn English.
They **need** to practice English.
He/She/It **needs** to attend class.

I _____ go shopping.
You _____ cook dinner.
You (all) _____ read a book.
We _____ go to class.
They _____ study every day.
He/She/It _____ eat lunch.



Like **like +** infinitive verb

I **like** to eat.
You **like** to study.
You (all) **like** to study.
We **like** to learn English.
They **like** to practice English.
He/She/It **likes** to attend class.

I _____ learn new things.
You _____ read books.
You (all) _____ go to class.
We _____ dance.
They _____ cook.
He/She/It _____ play sports.



Want

want + infinitive verb

I **want** to eat.
 You **want** to study.
 You (all) **want** to study.
 We **want** to learn English.
 They **want** to practice English.
 He/She/It **wants** to attend class.

I _____ read a book.
 You _____ study today.
 You (all) _____ eat lunch.
 We _____ visit their family.
 They _____ go to the store.
 He/She/It _____ dance.



Hope

hope + infinitive verb

I **hope** to learn a lot.
 You **hope** to visit my son.
 You (all) **hope** to see you.
 We **hope** to get a good job.
 They **hope** to learn English.
 He/She/It **hopes** to pass the class.

I _____ visit my family.
 You _____ see the game.
 You (all) _____ have fun.
 We _____ learn English.
 They _____ get a good job.
 He/She/It _____ learn a lot.



Get

get + infinitive verb

I **get** to see a movie.
 You **get** to cook lunch.
 You (all) **get** to visit California.
 We **get** to read a book.
 They **get** to play sports.
 He/She/It **gets** to go on vacation.

I _____ visit New York.
 You _____ play soccer.
 You (all) _____ read a book.
 We _____ cook dinner.
 They _____ see a movie.
 He/She/It _____ go on vacation.

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words.

When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. What are your responsibilities?
I have to work every day and help with the children.</p> | <p>2. What do you like to do?
I like to play sports and do hobbies.</p> |
| <p>3. I hope to learn English.
That's wonderful!</p> | <p>4. You have a lot to do!
Yes, I do. I am very busy.</p> |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | | |
|-----------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.</p> | <p>Expression:</p> | <p>That's right</p> |
| | <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>yes, I agree, that's correct</p> |
| | <p>Examples:</p> | <p>Yes, that's right!</p> |
| | <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>Yes!</p> |
| <p>2.</p> | <p>Expression:</p> | <p>You know</p> |
| | <p>Pronunciation:</p> | <p>Ya know</p> |
| | <p>Use:</p> | <p>"filler" phrase</p> |
| | <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>You understand, you can think about it, you know what I mean</p> |
| | <p>Example:</p> | <p>Oh, you know, those responsibilities.</p> |
| | <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>You know which responsibilities I'm talking about.</p> |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Present Tense—Sentence Practice

At Home with Family and Friends:

Optional Pronouns (I/You/We/They/ He/She/It)	Verb Conjugations (arrive, come, go, help, learn, listen, read, speak, stay, talk, teach, think, walk, write, study)	Optional Prepositional Phrases (to my/your/our/their/his/her home, at home, in the home, with family, to my/your/our/their/ his/her family, with my/your/ their/his/her family, with my/ your/our/their/his/her children, to my/your/his or her wife/ hus- band, with my/your/his/her wife/husband, to my/your/our/ their/his/her friends, with my/ your/our/their/his/her friends)
I	<u>eat</u>	<u>with my family</u>
I		
You / We / They		
He / She		

Have several learners fill in the chart on the board or on a separate page. Have them speak in sentences using various subjects, proper conjugations, and appropriate prepositional phrases. Help them practice proper pronunciation.



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

to plan	<i>planear</i>	responsibility	<i>responsabilidad</i>
activities	<i>actividades</i>	occupation	<i>ocupación</i>
object	<i>objeto</i>	music	<i>música</i>

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box on the solid lines. Fold the dialog on the dotted line and practice the English sentences to memorize them. You can use the other side of the card to help you understand the meaning of the dialog.

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Recorte el recuadro en las líneas continuas. Doble el diálogo en la línea punteada y practique las oraciones en inglés para memorizarlas. Puede usar el otro lado de la tarjeta para que le ayude a entender el significado del diálogo.

Card 5A

Module 5 Dialog		Diálogo
Son:	What are your responsibilities?	¿Cuáles son tus responsabilidades?
Father:	What do you mean?	¿Qué quieres decir?
Son:	You know, things you have to do, your duties.	Ya sabes, cosas que tienes que hacer, tus tareas.
Father:	Oh, you mean my work and home responsibilities?	Oh, ¿te refieres a mis responsabilidades en el trabajo y en la casa?
Son:	Yes, that's right.	Sí, así es.
Father:	I have to work every day. I also help with the children. I like to play sports and to do hobbies. I also hope to learn English.	Tengo que trabajar todos los días. También ayudo con los niños. Me gusta jugar deportes y entretenerme con pasatiempos. También espero aprender inglés.
Son:	So some are responsibilities that you have to do, and others are activities that you like to do.	Entonces algunas son responsabilidades que tienes que hacer y otras son actividades que te gusta hacer.
Father:	Yes, I think responsibilities are usually things you have to do.	Sí, creo que las responsabilidades por lo general son cosas que uno tiene que hacer.

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box on the solid lines. Fold the lists on the dotted lines and practice until you know the vocabulary, grammar, and proper pronunciation. You can use the other columns of the card to help you understand the meaning of the words.

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Recorte el recuadro en las líneas continuas. Doble las listas en las líneas punteadas y practique hasta que sepa el vocabulario, la gramática y la pronunciación adecuada. Puede usar las otras columnas de la tarjeta para que le ayuden a entender el significado de las palabras.

Card 5B

Helping verbs	Translation
1. To have to	<i>Tener que</i>
2. To need to	<i>Necesitar</i>
3. To like to	<i>Gustar</i>
4. To want to	<i>Desear</i>
5. To hope to	<i>Esperar</i>
6. To get to	<i>Llegar a</i>

Module 6

MAKING A DOCTOR'S APPOINTMENT

Making a Doctor's Appointment 6

Present Progressive Tense
(3 classes with subsequent review)

Objectives *Objetivos*



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. make a doctor's appointment.
- ☐ 2. answer questions about a calendar, such as dates and months.
- ☐ 3. express common actions using present progressive tense.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Juan:	Hello, this is Juan Sanchez. I need to make an appointment with the doctor.	<i>Hola, habla Juan Sánchez. Necesito hacer una cita con el doctor.</i>
Mary:	Sure. What problem are you having?	<i>Claro. ¿Qué problema tiene?</i>
Juan:	I am having stomachaches and headaches.	<i>Tengo dolor de estómago y dolor de cabeza.</i>
Mary:	Are you living in this area?	<i>¿Vive en esta zona?</i>
Juan:	No, I am from Florida and I am visiting my brother here in Salt Lake City for the week.	<i>No, soy de Florida y esta semana estoy visitando a mi hermano aquí en Salt Lake City.</i>
Mary:	We can see you this afternoon at 3:00.	<i>Podemos atenderlo esta tarde a las 15:00 h.</i>
Juan:	How do I get there if I am going north on Highway 15?	<i>¿Cómo llego allí si voy hacia el norte por la carretera 15?</i>
Mary:	Get off at the 6th South exit, and come to 150 East. See you at 3:00.	<i>Tome la salida de la calle 600 Sur y diríjase a la 150 Este. Nos vemos a las 15:00 h.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

-ll- hello, yellow, mellow

-ct- doctor, tractor, victor

sh- shoe, should, shy

pr- problem, price, produce

ch- stomach, ache

v- visiting, travel, victory

th- this, these, those, the

th- thing, think, thank

th- north, math, bath

-x- exit, excuse, exam

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

he__o ye__ow me__ow

do__or tra__or vi__or

__oe __ould __y

__oblem __ice __oduce

stoma__ a__e

__isiting tra__el __ictory

__is __ese __ose

__ing __ink __ank

nor__ ma__ ba__

e__it e__cuse e__am



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

Word

Rhyming Words

make bake cake lake take brake fake snake

hello yellow mellow jello fellow

cure pure obscure secure

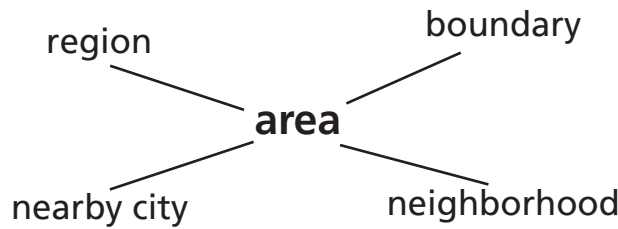
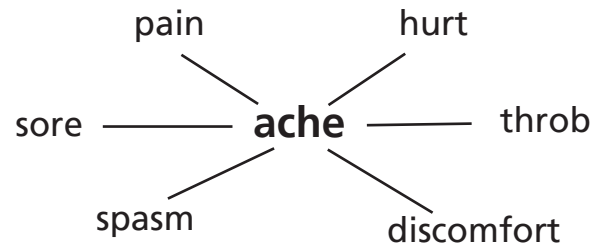
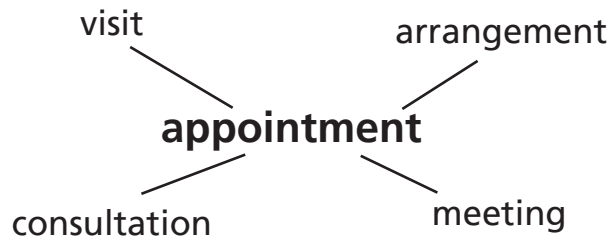
north forth orthodontist

come some



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir con palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| make • | • arriving |
| aches • | • trouble, symptom |
| doctor • | • meeting |
| problem • | • set |
| appointment • | • region |
| area • | • residing |
| living • | • physician |
| visiting • | • depart, leave |
| coming • | • pain |
| highway • | • off ramp |
| get off • | • traveling |
| exit • | • freeway, interstate |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

make

set

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Listen, repeat, and write.

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

make

appointment

doctor

problem

aches

area

living

visiting

coming

highway

get off

exit

Writing Practice

Related Words

set

meeting

physician

trouble

pain

region

residing

traveling

arriving

freeway

depart

off ramp

Writing Practice



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

Juan: Hello, _____ Juan Sanchez. I need to _____ an appointment with the doctor.

Mary: Sure. _____ are you having?

Juan: I am having _____ and _____.

Mary: Are you _____ in this _____?

Juan: No, I am from Florida and I am _____ my brother here in Salt Lake City for the _____.

Mary: We can _____ you this _____ at 3:00.

Juan: How do I _____ I am going north on Highway 15?

Mary: _____ 6th South exit, and come to 150 East.
_____ 3:00.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.

Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

What problem (symptoms)
are you having?

Do you have any aches or
pains

Are you from this area?

How do I get to your
office?

Are you coming from the
north or the south?



From the dialog, circle the correct word. Write the complete sentence in pencil.

Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta. Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. (Sure / Sir), what problem are
you (halving / having) ?
2. I need to (make / mack) an
appointment (with / want) the
doctor.
3. Are you (leaving / living) in this
(area / airy) ?
4. I am having (stomachs / stomach
) aches and headaches.
5. We (con / can) see you (these /
this) afternoon at 3:00.
6. I am (from / front) Florida and (
are / am) visiting my brother.

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



The day before yesterday was	Yesterday was	Today is	Tomorrow is	The day after tomorrow is
Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday

Instructors have learners stand in the center of the room and say with them, "Today is Tuesday." Then all step left into the past and say, "Yesterday was Monday." Step further left into the past and say, "The day before yesterday was Sunday." Then take two steps back to the present and repeat, "Today is Tuesday." Then step right into the future and say, "Tomorrow is Wednesday." Take another step right and say, "The day after tomorrow is Thursday." Repeat the whole sequence.

Do the same stepping and repeating process for each of the following time sequences, starting with the center present.:

The week before last	Last week	This week	Next week	The week after next
he was sick.	we were here.	I have a lot of work.	class starts.	the month ends.

The month before last	Last month	This month	Next month	The month after next
was February.	was March.	is April.	will be May.	will be June.

Year before last	Last year	This year	Next year	The year after next
was 2014.	was 2015.	is 2016.	will be 2017.	will be 2018.

Then instructors project pages 9 and 10 from Module 2 on a board and have learners fill in their notebook copies with answers.



Language Focus: Calendar Concepts

	Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
First week		1	2	3	4	5	6
Second week	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Third week	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
Fourth week	21	22	23	24	25	26	27
Fifth week	28	29	30	31			

Instructors ask questions about the first and last days of the week and month. They also ask questions about other days of the month. For example, “If today is the 17th, what was yesterday?” Or, “What will tomorrow be?” Help the learners answer in complete sentences.



Language Focus: 60 Common Verbs— Practice Present Progressive Tense



Verb	I	You / We / They	He / She / It	Write the correct verb form.
1. answer	I am answering	You are answering	He is answering	They _____ him.
2. arrive	I am arriving	You are arriving	He is arriving	She _____ today.
3. ask	I am asking	You are asking	He is asking	He _____ a question.
4. begin	I am beginning	You are beginning	He is beginning	You _____ tomorrow.
5. believe	I believe*	You believe*	He believes*	We _____ you.
6. bring	I am bringing	You are bringing	He is bringing	She _____ a friend.
7. call	I am calling	You are calling	He is calling	They _____ regularly.
8. come	I am coming	You are coming	He is coming	I _____ home.
9. drink	I am drinking	You are drinking	He is drinking	They _____ a lot.
10. eat	I am eating	You are eating	He is eating	You _____ tomorrow.
11. feel	I feel*	You feel*	He feels*	She _____ sad.
12. find	I am finding	You are finding	He is finding	He _____ lost coins.
13. get	I am getting	You are getting	He is getting	I _____ tired.
14. give	I am giving	You are giving	He is giving	You _____ her help.
15. have	I have*	You have*	He has*	We _____ to study.
16. hear	I hear*	You hear*	He hears*	You _____ some music.
17. help	I am helping	You are helping	He is helping	They _____ tomorrow.
18. invite	I am inviting	You are inviting	He is inviting	We _____ everybody.
19. know	I know*	You know*	He knows*	You _____ what to do.
20. laugh	I am laughing	You are laughing	He is laughing	She _____ all the time.
21. learn	I am learning	You are learning	He is learning	We _____ the verbs.
22. leave	I am leaving	You are leaving	He is leaving	They _____ at noon.
23. like	I like*	You like*	He likes*	He _____ the class.
24. listen	I am listening	You are listening	He is listening	I _____ to the lecture.
25. look	I am looking	You are looking	He is looking	He _____ tired.
26. love	I love*	You love*	He loves*	They _____ it.
27. make	I am making	You are making	He is making	She _____ a cake.
28. meet	I am meeting	You are meeting	He is meeting	They _____ each other.
29. I need	I need*	You need*	He needs*	You _____ to speak more.
30. read	I am reading	You are reading	He is reading	I _____ the book.

31.	I remember	I remember*	You remember*	He remembers*	She	_____	to meet him.
32.	repeat	I am repeating	You are repeating	He is repeating	You	_____	the dialog.
33.	say	I am saying	You are saying	He is saying	She	_____	it out loud.
34.	see	I see*	You see*	He sees*	We	_____	him tonight.
35.	sing	I am singing	You are singing	He is singing	They	_____	in the choir.
36.	speak	I am speaking	You are speaking	He is speaking	He	_____	English well.
37.	spell	I am spelling	You are spelling	He is spelling	She	_____	the word right.
38.	stay	I am staying	You are staying	He is staying	We	_____	until Friday.
39.	take	I am taking	You are taking	He is taking	It	_____	a long time.
40.	talk	I am talking	You are talking	He is talking	We	_____	.
41.	tell	I am telling	You are telling	He is telling	They	_____	her the answer.
42.	think	I think*	You think*	He thinks*	He	_____	about his mom.
43.	understand	I understand*	You understand*	He understands*	You	_____	well.
44.	visit	I am visiting	You are visiting	He is visiting	We	_____	relatives.
45.	walk	I am walking	You are walking	He is walking	I	_____	for exercise.
46.	want	I want*	You want*	He wants*	He	_____	to learn English.
47.	work	I am working	You are working	He is working	She	_____	on Saturday.
48.	write	I am writing	You are writing	He is writing	I	_____	well.
49.	do	I am doing	You are doing	He is doing	You	_____	too much.
50.	go	I am going	You are going	He is going	I	_____	home early.
51.	cash	I am cashing	You are cashing	He is cashing	He	_____	the check.
52.	finish	I am finishing	You are finishing	He is finishing	I	_____	on time.
53.	teach	I am teaching	You are teaching	He is teaching	He	_____	classes.
54.	watch	I am watching	You are watching	He is watching	They	_____	baseball.
55.	cry	I am crying	You are crying	He is crying	She	_____	at night.
56.	fly	I am flying	You are flying	He is flying	We	_____	to New York.
57.	study	I am studying	You are studying	He is studying	I	_____	every day.
58.	try	I am trying	You are trying	He is trying	We	_____	hard.
59.	be	I am*	You are*	He is*	He	_____	good.
60.	be able to (can)	I am able to I can*	You are able to You can*	He is able to He can*	You	_____	speak more.

* When the verb conveys thought or feeling, one normally uses present rather than present progressive.

Instructors should have fun with this practice by acting out some of these for the learners. Show the action of the verb and motion to oneself for *I*, to a man for *he*, a woman for *she*, to two people for *they*, and all as a group for *we*. This gesturing through the conjugations is extremely important to the learning process. Then ask for volunteers while others join in.

Instructors should use this list, including more role-plays, as a review before the next two modules.

**Verbs ending with e****Infinitive** **to arrive**

1. drop to: = arrive

2. drop the *e* = arriv3. add *-ing* = arriving**Examples**

I am arriving.

You / We / They are arriving.

He / She / It is arriving.

Infinitive **Verb + *ing***

to arrive arriving

to believe believing

to come coming

to give giving

to have having

to invite inviting

Infinitive **Verb + *ing***

to leave leaving

to like liking

to love loving

to make making

to take taking

to write writing

Other verbs**infinitive** **to ask**

1. drop to = ask

2. add *-ing* = asking**Examples**

I am asking.

You / We / They are asking.

He / She / It is asking.

Infinitive	Verb + <i>ing</i>	Infinitive	Verb + <i>ing</i>	Infinitive	Verb + <i>ing</i>
to answer	answering	to hear	hearing	to speak	speaking
to ask	asking	to help	helping	to spell	spelling
to be	being	to know	knowing	to stay	staying
to bring	bringing	to laugh	laughing	to study	studying
to cash	to cash	to learn	learning	to talk	talking
to call	calling	to listen	listening	to teach	teaching
to cry	crying	to look	looking	to tell	telling
to do	doing	to meet	meeting	to think	thinking
to drink	drinking	to need	needing	to try	trying
to eat	eating	to read	reading	to understand	understanding
to feel	feeling	to remember	remembering	to visit	visiting
to find	finding	to repeat	repeating	to walk	walking
to finish	finishing	to say	saying	to want	wanting
to fly	flying	to see	seeing	to watch	watching
to go	going	to sing	singing	to work	working

Verbs ending with *-in* or *-et*:

Infinitive

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1. drop to: | = | begin |
| 2. double final consonant | = | beginn |
| 3. add <i>-ing</i> | = | beginning |

to begin

Examples

I am beginning.	You / We / They are beginning.	He / She / It is beginning.
I am getting.	You / We / They are getting.	He / She / It is getting.

Infinitive

to begin
to get

Verb + *ing*

beginning
getting



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

1. Hello, can I help you?

Hi. I need to schedule an appointment.

2. We have openings tomorrow at 11:00, 12:00, and 1:00. Which is best for you?

Can I come in at 11:00?

3. What seems to be the problem?

I have stomach cramps.

4. How do I get to your office if I am heading south on the highway?

Take exit 13 and take your first left.

Instructors explain the meaning and then demonstrate and get repetition.



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

1. **Expression:** make an appointment
Meaning: plan a time for a meeting
Examples: We can make an appointment for Saturday.
Meaning: We can plan to meet on Saturday.
2. **Expression:** heading north
Meaning: driving / walking / riding toward the north
Examples: I'm heading north on State Street.
Meaning: I am driving my car on State Street toward the north.
3. **Expression:** Get off at
Meaning: exit from, turn off at
Examples: Get off State Street onto Lumbar Road.
Meaning: Turn off of State Street and on to Lumbar Road.

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Present Tense—Sentence Practice

At School or Class

Optional Pronouns	Verb Conjugations	Optional Prepositional Phrases
(I/You/We/They/ He/She/It)	(answer, arrive, come, go, help, learn, like, listen, read, speak, spell, study, talk, think, walk, write)	(before class, to class, in class, during class, after class, before school, to school, in school)
I	<u>am walking</u>	<u>to class</u>
You/We/They		
He/She/It		

Have several learners fill in the chart on the board or on a separate page. Have them speak in sentences using various subjects, proper conjugations, and appropriate prepositional phrases. Help them practice proper pronunciation.



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

area

área

problem

problema

stomach

estómago

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box on the solid lines. Fold the dialog on the dotted line and practice the English sentences to memorize them. You can use the other side of the card to help you understand the meaning of the dialog.

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Recorte el recuadro en las líneas continuas. Doble el diálogo en la línea punteada y practique las oraciones en inglés para memorizarlas. Puede usar el otro lado de la tarjeta para que le ayude a entender el significado del diálogo.

Card 6A

Module 6	Dialog	<i>Diálogo</i>
Juan:	Hello, this is Juan Sanchez. I need to make an appointment with the doctor.	<i>Hola, habla Juan Sánchez. Necesito hacer una cita con el doctor.</i>
Mary:	Sure, what problem are you having?	<i>Claro. ¿Qué problema tiene?</i>
Juan:	I am having stomachaches and headaches.	<i>Tengo dolor de estómago y dolor de cabeza.</i>
Mary:	Are you living in this area?	<i>¿Vive en esta zona?</i>
Juan:	No, I am from Florida and I am visiting my brother here in Salt Lake City for the week.	<i>No, soy de Florida y esta semana estoy visitando a mi hermano aquí en Salt Lake City.</i>
Mary:	We can see you this afternoon at 3:00.	<i>Podemos atenderlo esta tarde a las 15:00 h.</i>
Juan:	How do I get there if I am going north on Highway 15?	<i>¿Cómo llego allí si voy hacia el norte por la carretera 15?</i>
Mary:	Get off at the 6th South exit, and come to 150 East. See you at 3:00.	<i>Tome la salida de la calle 600 Sur y diríjase a la 150 Este. Nos vemos a las 15:00 h.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box(es) on the solid lines. Fold the lists on the dotted lines and practice until you know the vocabulary, grammar, and proper pronunciation. You can use the other columns of the card to help you understand the meaning of the words.

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Recorte el(los) recuadro(s) en las líneas continuas. Doble las listas en las líneas punteadas y practique hasta que sepa el vocabulario, la gramática y la pronunciación adecuada. Puede usar las otras columnas de la tarjeta para que le ayuden a entender el significado de las palabras.

Card 6B

Verb	I	You / We / They	He / She / It
1. answer	I am answering	You are answering	He is answering
2. arrive	I am arriving	You are arriving	He is arriving
3. ask	I am asking	You are asking	He is asking
4. begin	I am beginning	You are beginning	He is beginning
5. believe	I believe	You believe	He believes
6. bring	I am bringing	You are bringing	He is bringing
7. call	I am calling	You are calling	He is calling
8. come	I am coming	You are coming	He is coming
9. drink	I am drinking	You are drinking	He is drinking
10. eat	I am eating	You are eating	He is eating
11. feel	I feel	You feel	He feels
12. find	I am finding	You are finding	He is finding
13. get	I am getting	You are getting	He is getting
14. give	I am giving	You are giving	He is giving
15. have	I have	You have	He has
16. hear	I hear	You hear	He hears
17. help	I am helping	You are helping	He is helping
18. invite	I am inviting	You are inviting	He is inviting
19. know	I know	You know	He knows
20. laugh	I am laughing	You are laughing	He is laughing

Card 6C

Verb	I	You / We / They	He / She / It
21. learn	I am learning	You are learning	He is learning
22. leave	I am leaving	You are leaving	He is leaving
23. like	I like	You like	He likes
24. listen	I am listening	You are listening	He is listening
25. look	I am looking	You are looking	He is looking
26. love	I love	You love	He loves
27. make	I am making	You are making	He is making
28. meet	I am meeting	You are meeting	He is meeting
29. need	I need	You need	He needs
30. read	I am reading	You are reading	He is reading
31. remember	I remember	You remember	He remembers
32. repeat	I am repeating	You are repeating	He is repeating
33. say	I am saying	You are saying	He is saying
34. see	I see	You see	He sees
35. sing	I am singing	You are singing	He is singing
36. speak	I am speaking	You are speaking	He is speaking
37. spell	I am spelling	You are spelling	He is spelling
38. stay	I am staying	You are staying	He is staying
39. take	I am taking	You are taking	He is taking
40. talk	I am talking	You are talking	He is talking

Card 6D

Verb	I	You / We / They	He / She / It
41. tell	I am telling	You are telling	He is telling
42. think	I think	You think	He thinks
43. understand	I understand	You understand	He understands
44. visit	I am visiting	You are visiting	He is visiting
45. walk	I am walking	You are walking	He is walking
46. want	I want	You want	He wants
47. work	I am working	You are working	He is working
48. write	I am writing	You are writing	He is writing
49. do	I am doing	You are doing	He is doing
50. go	I am going	You are going	He is going
51. cash	I am cashing	You are cashing	He is cashing
52. finish	I am finishing	You are finishing	He is finishing
53. teach	I am teaching	You are teaching	He is teaching
54. watch	I am watching	You are watching	He is watching
55. cry	I am crying	You are crying	He is crying
56. fly	I am flying	You are flying	He is flying
57. study	I am studying	You are studying	He is studying
58. try	I am trying	You are trying	He is trying
59. be	I am	You are	He is
60. be able to (can)	I am able to I can	You are able to You can	He is able to He can

Module 7

BUYING SHOES

Buying Shoes

7

(3 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives
Objetivos

At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. say the type of shoes I want to buy.
- ☐ 2. express how I feel.
- ☐ 3. ask and answer questions using the verb **to do**.
- ☐ 4. use the verb **to be + doing** to express how I am doing.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.
Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Clerk:	May I help you?	<i>¿Puedo ayudarlos?</i>
Mr. Hobbs:	Yes, we're looking for some shoes.	<i>Sí, estamos buscando zapatos.</i>
Clerk:	For you or for your son?	<i>¿Para usted o para su hijo?</i>
Mr. Hobbs:	For my son.	<i>Para mi hijo.</i>
Clerk:	What kind does he want?	<i>¿De qué tipo quiere él?</i>
Mr. Hobbs:	He wants blue sports shoes.	<i>Quiere zapatos deportivos azules.</i>
Clerk:	Do you know his size?	<i>¿Sabe cuánto calza?</i>
Mr. Hobbs:	Twelve! He has big feet!	<i>¡Doce! ¡Tienes pies grandes!</i>
Clerk:	How do these feel?	<i>¿Cómo los sientes?</i>
Brian:	A little tight.	<i>Un poco apretados.</i>
Clerk:	Try these.	<i>Prueba estos.</i>
Brian:	They're much better. I'll take them.	<i>Están mucho mejor. Me los llevo.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

-ay may, day, okay

-ize size, prize

y- yes, you, your

tw- twenty, twelve, twist

-oy boy, joy, toy

-uch much, such

-ind kind, find, behind

-ue blue, true, glue

-ake bake, take, cake, make

kn- know, knife, knock

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

m ____ d ____ ok ____

s ____ pr ____

____ es ____ ou ____ our

____ enty ____ elve ____ ist

b ____ j ____ t ____

m ____ s ____

k ____ f ____ beh ____

bl ____ tr ____ gl ____

b ____ t ____ c ____

____ ow ____ ife ____ ock



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

Word Rhyming Words

may bay day gray hay lay pay play pray way

look book brook cook crook hook nook took

blue clue due glue true

size prize

big dig fig pig twig wig

feet beet meet street sweet tweet

better letter fether

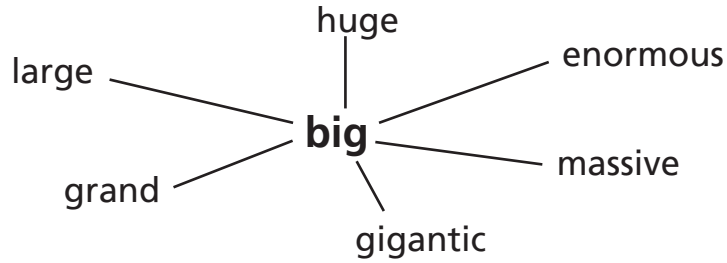
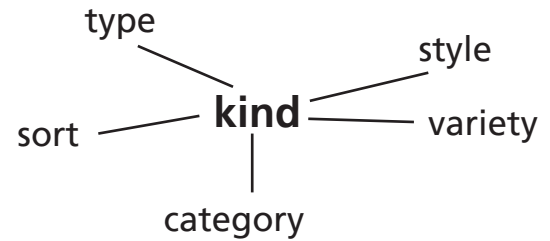
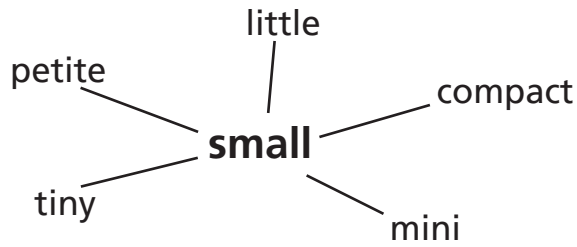
bake cake fake lake make rake stake wake

back black crack hack jack knock lack pack rack sack tack track



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir con palabras relacionadas)



Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| little • | • assist |
| tight • | • large |
| help • | • firm |
| kind • | • improved |
| big • | • type |
| may I • | • test |
| try • | • length |
| better • | • blue |
| color • | • small |
| size • | • can I |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

little

small



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Listen, repeat, and write.

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

little •
tight •
help •
kind •
big •
may I •
try •
better •
color •
size •

Writing Practice

Related Words

small
firm
assist
type
large
can I
test
improved
blue
length

Writing Practice



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

Clerk: _____ I help you?

Mr. Hobbs: Yes, we're _____ for _____ shoes.

Clerk: For _____ or for _____ son?

Mr. Hobbs: For my _____.

Clerk: What _____ does _____ want?

Mr. Hobbs: He wants blue _____ shoes.

Clerk: Do _____ know his _____?

Mr. Hobbs: Twelve! He has _____ feet!

Clerk: How do these _____?

Brian: A _____ tight.

Clerk: _____ these.

Brian: They're _____ better. I'll _____ them.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.

Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

1. What kind of shoes does your son want? He wants
2. How do they feel?
3. What size does he wear?
4. May I help you?
5. Are these better?
6. What color does he want?
7. What are you looking for?
8. Who are the shoes for?



From the dialog, circle the correct word.

Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta.

Write the complete sentence in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. We're looking (for / far) (some / same) shoes.
2. (Far / For) (you / your) or for (you / your) son?
3. For (my / mine) son.
4. (That / What) kind (do / does) he (want / won't)?
5. He wants blue (chews / chose / shoes).
6. Do you (no / now / know) his size?
7. He has (bag / big / bug) feet!
8. How do (this / these / the) feel?
9. A little (right / tight).

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Language Focus: **do, does**

The verb **to do** emphasizes the main verb of a sentence.



Regular main verb: **want**

I want shoes.

He wants shoes.

--

conjugate

The verb **do** also asks and answers questions.

Do you want shoes?

Does he want shoes?

--	--

conjugate

base form

Examples

Do we get a lot of snow?

Does it have a lid?

do or **does** emphasizes **want**

I **do** want shoes.

He **does** want shoes.

--	--

conjugate

base form

Yes, I **do** want shoes.

Yes, I **do.**

Yes, he **does** want shoes.

Yes, he **does.**

--	--

conjugate

base form

Yes, we **do** get a lot of snow.

Yes, we **do.**

Yes, it **does** have a lid.

Yes, it **does.**

Write **do** or **does** to complete the sentences below.

1. She _____ not have a cat.
2. We _____ like these shoes.
3. _____ you want to watch a movie?
4. I _____ want to watch a movie.
5. _____ he like to run?
6. No, he _____ not. He likes to swim.
7. _____ they go to class?
8. Yes, they _____ go to class.
9. _____ it have a lid?
10. No, it _____ not have a lid.

Conjugation of **to do**

I	do	We	do
you	do	they	do
he	does		
she	does		
it	does		

Contractions

Do not	=	Don't
Does not	=	Doesn't



Language Focus: Am/Is/Are + Doing

Asking and answering questions with the verb **to do**.



How are you doing?

I am doing

I am not doing

well
okay
great
too badly

(meaning

Que quiere decir)

I am. . .

very good

good

good

okay

okay

badly

I am doing

(really/very/pretty)

great

(really/very/pretty)

well

(pretty)

good

okay

all right

not so great

I am NOT doing

(very)

well

okay

bad



Examples

I am

I am doing well.

I am not doing well.

He/She/It is

He is doing well.

He is not doing well.

She is doing well.

She is not doing well.

John is doing well.

John is not doing well.

It is not doing well.

You/We/They are

You are doing well.

You are not doing well.

We are not doing well.

They are doing well.

They are not doing well.

We are doing well.

It is doing well.

Everybody is doing well.



Language Focus: Practice Using **Am/Is/Are + Doing**

Asking and answering questions with the verb **to do**

Follow the model

Words	Sentence (use doing)	Meaning
I / well	<u>I am doing well.</u>	<u>I am good.</u>
We / not / bad	<u>We are not doing badly.</u>	<u>We are good.</u>
We / ok		
It / great		
She / alright		
They / not / great		
You / very well		
He / not / very well		
John / okay		
Brad and Ben / well		
She / not / okay		



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Do you need anything?
No, thank you. I think I have everything I need right now. | 2. How are you feeling today?
Not great. I've been better. |
| 3. I think I just have a cold.
Oh, that's not good. | 4. Good evening.
Welcome. Please come in. |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Language Focus: Practice **Do** and **Does**

Asking and answering questions with the verb **to do**



Question

Answer

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. What kind of shoes does he want? | He <u>wants</u> blue athletic shoes. |
| 2. How do these feel? | They <u>feel</u> a little tight. |
| 3. Do you know his size? | Yes, I <u>know</u> his size. |
| 4. Does he have big feet? | Yes, he <u>has</u> big feet. |

Write the appropriate answer with **do** or **does**.

Question

Answer

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. How do they feel? | They feel good. |
| 2. Do they feel good? | They feel good. |
| 3. What kind of shoes does he want? | He wants blue athletic shoes. |
| 4. How do these feel? | They feel a little tight. |
| 5. Do they feel better? | Yes, they feel better. |
| 6. Do you want these? | Yes, I want to take these |
| 7. Do they know his size? | Yes, they know his size. |
| 8. Do the shoes feel big? | Yes, they feel big |
| 9. Do you want these shoes? | Yes, we want these shoes. |
| 10. Do athletes have big feet? | Yes, athletes have big feet. |



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. How do those feel?
They fit perfectly! | 2. How may I help you?
We're looking for some shoes. |
| 3. May I help you find something?
Oh, I'm just looking. Thank you. | 4. May I try this pair?
Sure, let me measure your feet. |
| 5. How much are they?
They're on sale for 30 dollars (\$30.00). | |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Expression | take | |
| Meaning | buy, purchase | |
| Example | I'll take these. | |
| Meaning | I'll buy these. | |
| 2. Expression | just looking | |
| Meaning | I don't want help. | |
| Example | May I help you? | No, I'm just looking right now. |
| Meaning | May I help you? | No, I don't want help right now. |
| 3. Expression | feel | |
| Meaning | fit | |
| Example | How do they feel? | |
| Meaning | How do they fit? | |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Present Progressive Tense—Sentence Practice

At Work with Supervisor or Other Employees

Optional Pronouns	Verb Conjugations	Optional Prepositional Phrases
(I / You / We / They / He / She / It)	(arrive, come, go, help, learn, listen, speak, talk, teach, think, walk, write, study)	(before work, to work, at work, during work, after work)
I	<u>am walking</u>	<u>to work</u>
I		
You / We / They	<u>are</u>	
He / She	<u>is</u>	

Have several learners fill in the chart on the board or on a separate page and say sentences using various subjects, proper conjugations, and appropriate prepositional phrases. After a learner says a proper sentence with good pronunciation, the rest of the class says the same sentence. Instructors help learners practice proper pronunciation.



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

supermarket	<i>supermercado</i>	discount	<i>descuento</i>
special	<i>especial</i>	color	<i>color</i>
perfect	<i>perfecto</i>	athletic	<i>atlético</i>

Instructors explain the significance of cognates and demonstrate pronunciation.



Language Focus: 60 Common Verbs

Use the vocabulary lists from Module 6 to role-play and practice verbs and conjugations. Show the action of the verb and motion to oneself for **I**, to a man for **he**, a woman for **she**, to two people for **they**, and all as a group for **we**. This gesturing through the conjugations is extremely important to the learning process. Then ask for volunteers while others join in.

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Cut out the box on the solid lines. Fold the dialog on the dotted line and practice the English sentences to memorize them. You can use the other side of the card to help you understand the meaning of the dialog.

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Recorte el recuadro en las líneas continuas. Doble el diálogo en la línea punteada y practique las oraciones en inglés para memorizarlas. Puede usar el otro lado de la tarjeta para que le ayude a entender el significado del diálogo.

Card 7A

Module 7	Dialog	<i>Diálogo</i>
Clerk:	May I help you?	<i>¿Puedo ayudarlos?</i>
Mr. Hobbs:	Yes, we're looking for some shoes.	<i>Sí, estamos buscando zapatos.</i>
Clerk:	For you or for your son?	<i>¿Para usted o para su hijo?</i>
Mr. Hobbs:	For my son.	<i>Para mi hijo.</i>
Clerk:	What kind does he want?	<i>¿De qué tipo quiere él?</i>
Mr. Hobbs:	He wants blue sports shoes.	<i>Quiere zapatos deportivos azules.</i>
Clerk:	Do you know his size?	<i>¿Sabe cuánto calza?</i>
Mr. Hobbs:	Twelve! He has big feet!	<i>¡Doce! ¡Tienes pies grandes!</i>
Clerk:	How do these feel?	<i>¿Cómo los sientes?</i>
Brian:	A little tight.	<i>Un poco apretados.</i>
Clerk:	Try these.	<i>Prueba estos.</i>
Brian:	It is nice to meet you, Sharon.	<i>Un gusto conocerte, Sharon.</i>

Module 8

HOW IS THE WEATHER?

How Is the Weather?

8

(3 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives
Objetivos

At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. say what the weather is like.
- ☐ 2. use verbs to say how I feel and who or what I visit.
- ☐ 3. use the verbs **to get** and **to begin** to describe daily events.
- ☐ 4. use the verb **to do** to emphasize a wish or an action.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa, ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Sara:	It's a beautiful day.	<i>Es un día hermoso.</i>
Jorge:	It sure is, nice and cool.	<i>Sí, lo es, lindo y fresco.</i>
Sara:	Does it get cold here?	<i>¿Hace frío aquí?</i>
Jorge:	Not really. It doesn't go below twenty degrees.	<i>La verdad, no. No baja de -7 grados.</i>
Sara:	How about the wind and rain?	<i>¿Y qué tal el viento y la lluvia?</i>
Jorge:	We get a lot of wind in March and rain in July.	<i>Tenemos mucho viento en marzo y lluvia en julio.</i>
Sara:	How hot does it get here?	<i>¿Qué tanto calor hace aquí?</i>
Jorge:	Around one hundred degrees, but it's a dry heat.	<i>Cerca de treinta y siete grados, pero es un calor seco.</i>
Sara:	Sounds pretty nice. We're moving here from Florida.	<i>Suena muy bien. Nos estamos mudando aquí desde Florida.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

-eau-	beauty, beautiful
tw-	twenty, twin, twice
-oo-	cool, pool, fool
-ind	find, kind, mind
h-	here, hot, how
j-	July, June, just, jump
-oes	does
-y	dry, try, cry
-lly	really, totally
-ice	nice, twice, dice
-n't	doesn't, can't, won't
ound	sounds, around, pound
-ow	below, snow, blow
ow	now, cow, how, brown

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

b ____ ty	b ____ tiful	
____ enty	____ in	____ ice
c ____ l	p ____ l	f ____ l
f ____	k ____	m ____
____ ere	____ ot	____ ow
____ uly	____ une	____ ump
d ____		
dr ____	tr ____	cr ____
rea ____	tota ____	
n ____	tw ____	d ____
does ____	ca ____	wo ____
s ____ s	ar ____	p ____
bel ____	sn ____	bl ____
n ____	c ____	h ____



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

<u>Word</u>	<u>Rhyming Words</u>					
nice	dice	lice	mice	price	slice	vice
rain	drain	gain	main	pain	plain	train
lots	dots	pots	spots	plots	rots	knots
dry	cry	fry	pry	try	wry	
heat	beat	meat	neat	seat	treat	wheat
sound	bound	found	ground	round		



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir con palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| dry • | • freezing |
| many • | • wet |
| cold • | • points |
| degrees • | • lots |
| snow • | • 100 |
| nice • | • heat |
| below • | • pleasant |
| around • | • about |
| one hundred • | • rain |
| wind • | • breeze |
| hot • | • under |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

dry

wet

Instructors demonstrate sentences using some of these words and then ask for volunteers to say more sentences.



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Write the words in pencil. Also, pronounce them with your assistant instructor.

Escriba las palabras con lápiz. Además, pronúncielas con el instructor auxiliar.

Dialog Words

beautiful
sure
below
around
nice
it's
lots
hot
cool
we get
pretty nice

Writing Practice

Related Words

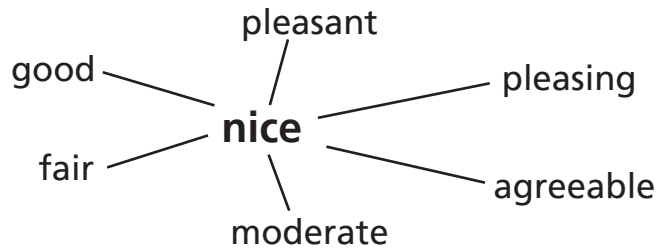
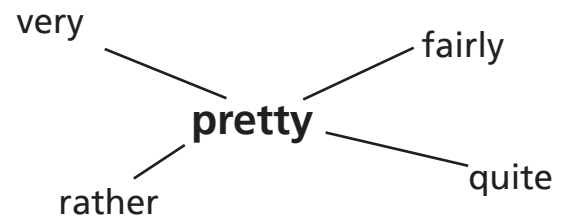
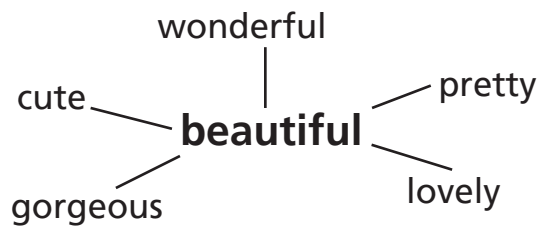
nice
certainly
less than, under
about
good
it is
many, a bunch of
warm
cold, chilly
we have
very nice

Writing Practice



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.
Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

- Sara: It's a _____ day.
- Jorge: It _____ is, nice and _____.
- Sara: Does it _____ cold _____?
- Jorge: Not _____. It doesn't go _____ twenty degrees.
- Sara: How about the wind and rain?
- Jorge: We get _____ of wind in March and _____ in July.
- Sara: _____ hot does it get here?
- Jorge: Around one hundred degrees, but it's a _____ heat.
- Sara: Sounds pretty nice. We're moving here from Florida.



From the dialog, circle the correct word.
Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta.

Write the complete sentence in pencil.
Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. (Its / It's) a beautiful day.
2. It (shore / sure) is, (niece / nice) and cool.
3. (Do / Does) it get cold (here / hear) ?
4. How about the (wind / wand) and (reign / rain) ?
5. How (hot / hat) does it get here?
6. Around (won / one / on) hundred degrees.
7. (Were / We're) moving (hear / here) from Florida..

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.
Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

What kind of day is it? It's

Does it get cold here?









How about the wind?

How hot does it get here?

Where are you moving from? We're moving from

Does it go below ten degrees here?



		Spring <i>Primavera</i>	Summer <i>Verano</i>	Fall <i>Otoño</i>	Winter <i>Invierno</i>
Florida		warm rain humid	hot rain humid storm	hot humid	warm sunny
Utah		rain wind cool	hot dry sunny	cool crisp cloudy	cold freezing snowy
	It's sunny. (soleado)		It's rainy. (lluvioso)		It's windy. (ventoso)
sun (sol)		rain (lluvia)		wind (viento)	
	It's cloudy. (nublado)		It's snowy. (nevoso o con nieve)		It's stormy. (tormentoso o con tormenta)
clouds (nubes)		snow (nieve)		storm (tormenta)	

Rewrite the following sentences according to the example. Use the words below.

Vuelva a escribir las siguientes oraciones según el ejemplo. Utilice las palabras siguientes.

cloudy freezing sunny nice stormy windy snowy chilly hot

The sun is shining. It's sunny.

The rain is falling. It's

There are many clouds.

The snow is falling.

The wind is blowing.

It's very cold outside.

The temperature is 100 degrees.

The temperature is 35 degrees.

It's a beautiful day outside.

There's a storm today.



Fill in the blanks

*Complete los espacios en blanco.***to get*** *tener, obtener, llegar a ser o convertirse.*

I	get	<u>lonely.</u>	I _____ a new prize.
You	get	<u>a new prize.</u>	You _____ together with friends.
You (all)	get	<u>to go</u> on vacation.	You (all) _____ hungry.
We	get	<u>together</u> with friends.	We _____ to attend class.
They	get	<u>hungry</u> in the morning.	They _____ lonely.
He/She/It	gets	<u>to attend</u> class.	He/She/It _____ to go on vacation.

To get se usa en muchas expresiones y tiene varios significados diferentes en inglés.*Other Conjugations**

get	I <u>get</u> lonely.	will get	They <u>will get</u> up early
got	He <u>got</u> the job.	am/is/are getting	She <u>is getting</u> married
used to get	We <u>used to get</u> hungry	have got	I <u>have got</u> a cold

to visit *visitar*

I	visit	<u>Mexico.</u>	I _____ the park today.
You	visit	<u>your sister.</u>	You _____ with friends.
You (all)	visit	<u>New York City.</u>	You (all) _____ the museum.
We	visit	with <u>our family.</u>	We _____ Mexico tomorrow.
They	visit	<u>the park</u> today.	They _____ their family.
He/She/It	visits	<u>the museum.</u>	He/She/It _____ New York City.

to feel *sentir*

I	feel	<u>sick.</u>	I _____ nervous about today.
You	feel	<u>excited</u> about the job.	You _____ like walking in the park.
You (all)	feel	<u>nervous.</u>	You (all) _____ tired today.
We	feel	<u>tired</u> today.	We _____ satisfied with the job.
They	feel	<u>satisfied</u> with it.	They _____ excited.
He/She/It	feels	<u>like eating ice cream*</u>	He/She/It _____ sick today.

**meaning she wants to*

to begin *comenzar*

I	begin	<u>studying</u> at 8 a.m.	I _____ preparing dinner.
You	begin	<u>the presentation</u> .	You _____ listening to the music.
You (all)	begin	<u>watching</u> TV.	You (all) _____ writing the letter.
We	begin	<u>reading</u> a new book.	We _____ a new TV show.
They	begin	<u>attending</u> class.	They _____ looking for a new job.
He/She/It	begins	<u>snowing</u> in December.	He/She/It _____ a new job.

to do **do+** verb (emphasis)

I	do	<u>want</u> shoes.	I _____ want my money.
You	do	<u>have</u> athletic shoes.	You _____ know the lesson.
You (all)	do	<u>know</u> your shoe size.	You (all) _____ study English.
We	do	<u>feel</u> big.	We _____ like it here.
They	do	<u>have</u> small feet.	They _____ need new shoes.
He/She	does	<u>need</u> new shoes.	He/She _____ have big feet.
It	does	<u>seem</u> like a good price.	It _____ get hot in the summer.



Vocabulary Practice *Práctica de vocabulario*

Remember that the verb **to do** is excellent for asking questions. Review some of the following examples and create some of your own questions.

*Recuerde que el verbo **to do** es excelente para hacer preguntas. Repase algunos de los siguientes ejemplos y cree algunas de sus propias preguntas.*

Do you get lonely? When does he visit Mexico? Where do they go on vacation?

Do you feel tired today? How does he feel? How do you like the food?



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog.



- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. What is the weather like outside?
It's not very nice out.</p> <p>3. How about the winters?
It gets very cold and snowy.</p> | <p>2. Is it always this windy here?
No, not usually.
Yes, all the time!</p> <p>4. I love the sunshine today.
Yeah, it's great.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | | |
|-----------|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.</p> | <p>Expression:</p> | <p>Sounds _____</p> |
| | <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>It seems _____ . / I think it's _____ .</p> |
| | <p>Examples:</p> | <p>Sounds nice.</p> |
| | <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>I think it's nice.</p> |
| <p>2.</p> | <p>Expression:</p> | <p>It gets _____ .</p> |
| | <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>It becomes _____ .</p> |
| | <p>Example:</p> | <p>It gets cold.</p> |
| | <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>It becomes cold.</p> |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Present Progressive Tense—Sentence Practice

At Home with Family and Friends:

Optional Pronouns (I / You / We / They / He / She / It)	To Be + Verb Conjugations (arrive, come, go, eat, help, learn, laugh, listen, read, speak, stay, talk, teach, think, walk, write, study)	Optional Prepositional Phrases (to my / your / our / their / his / her home, at home, in the home, with family, to my / your / our / their / his / her family, with my / your / their / his / her family, with my / your / our / their / his / her children, to my / your / his or her wife / husband, with my / your / his / her wife / husband, to my / your / our / their / his / her friends, with my / your / our / their / his / her friends)
I	<u>am eating</u>	<u>with my family</u>
I		
You / We / They	<u>are</u>	
He / She	<u>is</u>	

Have several learners fill in the chart on the board or on a separate page and say sentences using various subjects, proper conjugations, and appropriate prepositional phrases. After a learner says a proper sentence with good pronunciation, the rest of the class says the same sentence. Instructors help learners practice proper pronunciation.



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

temperature	<i>temperatura</i>	tornado	<i>tornado</i>
thermometer	<i>termómetro</i>	conversation	<i>conversación</i>
humid	<i>húmedo</i>		



Language Focus: 60 Common Verbs

Use the vocabulary lists from Module 6 to role-play and practice verbs and conjugations. Show the action of the verb and gesture through the conjugations. Then ask for volunteers while others join in. This is a review before the next two modules.

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Card 8A

Module 8	Dialog	Diálogo
Sara:	It's a beautiful day.	<i>Es un día hermoso.</i>
Jorge:	It sure is, nice and cool.	<i>Sí, lo es, lindo y fresco.</i>
Sara:	Does it get cold here?	<i>¿Hace frío aquí?</i>
Jorge:	Not really. It doesn't go below twenty degrees.	<i>La verdad, no. No baja de -7 grados.</i>
Sara:	How about the wind and rain?	<i>¿Y qué tal el viento y la lluvia?</i>
Jorge:	We get a lot of wind in March and rain in July.	<i>Tenemos mucho viento en marzo y lluvia en julio.</i>
Sara:	How hot does it get here?	<i>¿Qué tanto calor hace aquí?</i>
Jorge:	Around one hundred degrees, but it's a dry heat.	<i>Cerca de treinta y siete grados, pero es un calor seco.</i>
Sara:	Sounds pretty nice. We're moving here from Florida.	<i>Suena muy bien. Nos estamos mudando aquí desde Florida.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Card 8B

spring	<i>primavera</i>	clouds	<i>nubes</i>
summer	<i>verano</i>	cloudy	<i>nublado</i>
fall	<i>otoño</i>	storm	<i>tormenta</i>
winter	<i>invierno</i>	stormy	<i>tormentoso /con tormenta</i>
cool	<i>fresco</i>	wind	<i>viento</i>
cold	<i>frío</i>	windy	<i>ventoso</i>
warm	<i>cálido</i>	snow	<i>nieve</i>
hot	<i>calor</i>	snowy	<i>nevoso / con nieve</i>
dry	<i>seco</i>	chilly	<i>frío</i>
humid	<i>húmedo</i>	temperature	<i>temperatura</i>
rain	<i>lluvia</i>	degrees	<i>grados</i>
rainy	<i>lluvioso</i>		
sun	<i>sol</i>		
sunny	<i>soleado</i>		

Module 9

DIRECTIONS OUTSIDE

Directions Outside

9

(3 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives
Objetivos

At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. ask for directions.
- ☐ 2. give basic directions.
- ☐ 3. use the future tense.
- ☐ 4. say likes and dislikes.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
New Person:	Excuse me, can you please tell me where the post office is?	<i>Disculpe, ¿me puede decir por favor dónde está la oficina de correos?</i>
Local:	Sure. You will go to the third stop light. Then you will turn right and go two blocks north. You'll find it on the left.	<i>Claro. Vaya hasta el tercer semáforo. Luego doble a la derecha y siga dos cuadras hacia el norte. La encontrará a la izquierda.</i>
New Person:	Thanks. I am also looking for a drugstore.	<i>Gracias. También estoy buscando una farmacia.</i>
Local:	From the post office, you will cross the street and go south down the street. It will be on your right.	<i>De la oficina de correos, cruce la calle y vaya hacia el sur. Estará a su derecha.</i>
New Person:	Thanks. And where is a good place to eat? I like pizza.	<i>Gracias. Y, ¿dónde hay un buen lugar para comer? Me gusta la pizza.</i>
Local:	There is a Pizza Shop next to the drugstore.	<i>Hay un negocio de pizzas al lado de la farmacia.</i>
New Person:	Great, I'll give it a try. Thanks again.	<i>Magnífico, lo intentaré. Gracias otra vez.</i>
Local:	You're welcome.	<i>De nada.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

r- right, race, road, row

l- light, lace, load, low

str- street, strong, stretch

sh- sheet, ship, shame, shack

bl- block, blank, blood, black

br- break, branch, brand

pr- pray, prayer, present

pl- place, play, pleasure

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

_____ ight

_____ ight

_____ eet

_____ ip

_____ ock

_____ eak

_____ ay

_____ ace

_____ ace

_____ ace

_____ ong

_____ ame

_____ ank

_____ anch

_____ ayer

_____ ay

_____ oad

_____ oad

_____ etch

_____ ack

_____ ood

_____ and

_____ esent

_____ easure



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------------|
| excuse me • | • turn left |
| You're welcome • | • pardon me |
| tell me • | • directly in front of |
| third • | • pharmacy |
| turn right • | • store |
| across from • | • No problem |
| give it a try • | • in this area |
| street • | • show me |
| drugstore • | • road |
| around here • | • do it |
| shop • | • 3rd |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

excuse me

pardon me



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

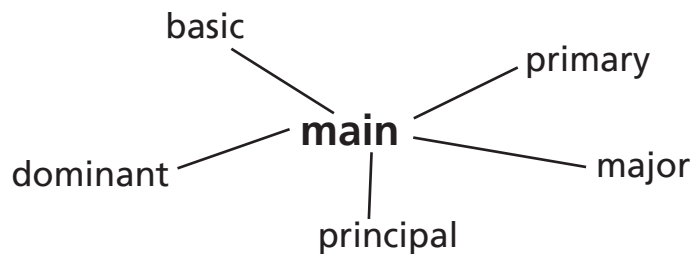
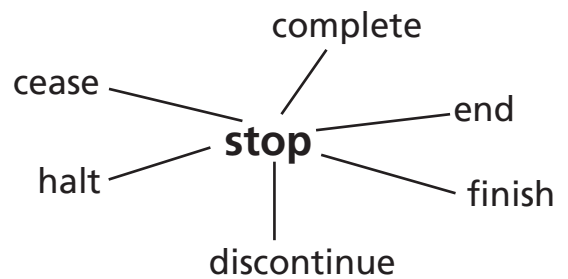
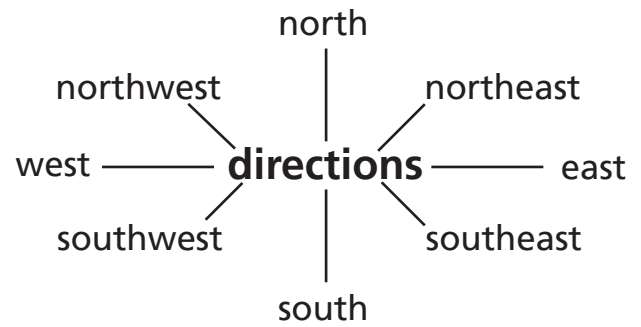
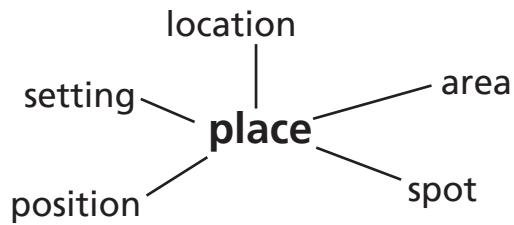
Escuche y repita despacio.

<u>Word</u>	<u>Rhyming Words</u>							
try	fry	dry	cry					
shop	cop	crop	drop	hop	mop	top	stop	
post	ghost	host	most					
block	clock	dock	flock	knock	lock	mock	rock	sock
am	dam	ham	lamb	Sam	yam			
light	bright	might	night	right	sight	slight	tight	
third	bird							
could	should	would						
where	there							
turn	burn							



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Write the words in pencil. Also, pronounce them with your assistant instructor.

Escriba las palabras con lápiz. Además, pronúncielas con el instructor auxiliar.

Dialog Words

Writing Practice

Related Words

Writing Practice

excuse me

you're welcome

tell me

third

turn right

right across from

give it a try

street

drugstore

around here

shop

pardon me

no problem

show me

3rd

turn left

directly in front of

do it

road

pharmacy

in this area

store



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

New Person: Excuse me, _____ you please tell me where the
_____ is?

Local: Sure. You will go to the _____ stop light. Then you will
_____ and go two blocks north.
_____ find it on the left.

New Person: Thanks. I am also _____ for a drugstore.

Local: From the post office, you will _____ the street and go
south down the street. _____ be on your
right.

New Person: Thanks. And where is a good _____ to eat? I like pizza.

Local: There is a Pizza Shop _____ to the drugstore.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.
 Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

Where is the post office?

It is

Where is the best place to eat around here?

Do I turn right or left?

How many blocks is it to the pizza place?

What are you looking for?

Is the drugstore past the third light?

Will you give it a try?



Put a slash (/) between the words.
 Ponga una barra (/) entre las palabras.

Write the complete sentence in pencil.
 Escriba la oración completa con lápiz.

1. Could/you/tell/me/where/the/post/office/is?

2. Yes,gotothethirdstoplight.

3. Turnrightandgotwoblocksnorth.

4. It'srightacrossthestreetfromthepostoffice.

5. Thanks.I'malsolookingforadrugstore.

6. Whereisthebestplacetoeataroundhere?

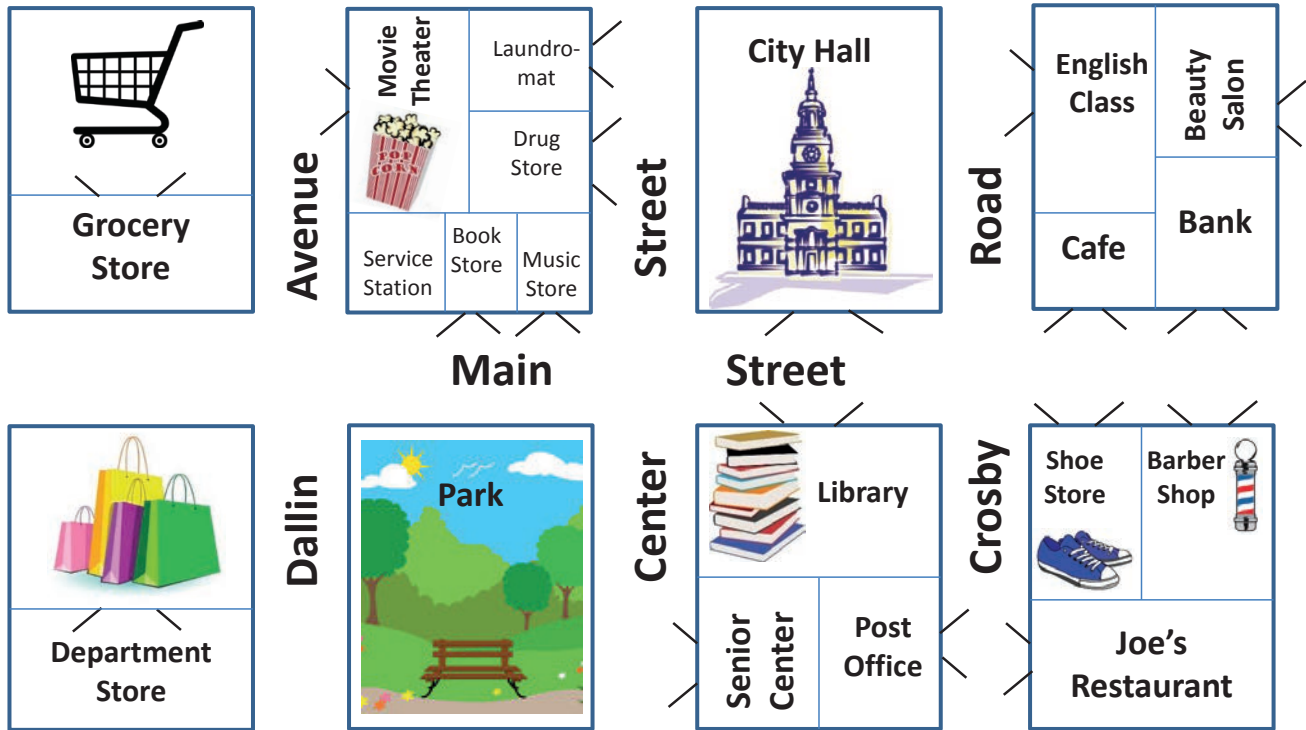
7. WelikethePizzaShoPONMainStreet.

8. Great.I'llgiveitatriy.

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



City Center



Instructors create a simple map of a town or use the map here (distribute copies or display it on a screen.) Instructors describe how to give directions from one place to another in the town. Learner volunteers give directions to an instructor for how to go from one location to another. Instructors may want to use a laser pointer to show their travel as the class gives directions to a destination. Instructors involve the learners as much as possible.



Language Focus: Phrases for Outside Directions



Use some of these phrases for the map activity on page 11. Practice sentences to give directions around your town.

Use algunas de estas frases para la actividad con el mapa de la página 11. Practique las oraciones para dar direcciones en su ciudad.

Go . . .	Turn . . .	Take . . .	Make . . .	Around . . .
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • one mile • two blocks • two lights • three stop signs • four streets • across the train tracks • until the street dead ends • straight • around the curve 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to the left • to the right • at Main Street • left at the first light • right on Center Street 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the first exit • the exit for El Camino • the next exit • a left at Main Street • a right at the stop sign 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a u-turn at the next light • a left after the railroad tracks 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the block • the corner

You can't miss it

= You can't miss it

Go back

= Go back

You have gone too far

= You have gone too far

Next / beside

In front of

Across the street is

_____.

Kitty corner

= diagonal

Where is the nearest / closest

_____?



Language Focus: The Future



will + verb

I will

I will ask for help.

I will watch TV in English.

You will

You will see what I mean.

You will read the book.

We will

We will read the dialog together.

We will listen to the audio.

They will

They will leave work at 5:00.

They will be able to get help.

He / She / It will

He will be ready for the next class.

She will write a work report.

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Language Focus: Contractions



Especially when speaking, people usually use a short form of the future tense. Look at the examples below and complete the exercises.

En especial cuando se habla, por lo general las personas usan la forma corta del tiempo futuro. Mire los ejemplos a continuación y complete los ejercicios.

I will	I'll	_____	eat with you.
You will	You'll	_____	like it.
We will	We'll	_____	learn together.
They will	They'll	_____	be very happy.
He will	He'll	_____	come at 3:00.
She will	She'll	_____	have a good day.
It will	It'll	_____	rain today.

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Language Focus: Contraction Practice

Write a correct pronoun + will contraction in the blank boxes.

Escriba el pronombre correcto + la contracción de will en los recuadros vacíos.

I'll	You'll	We'll	They'll	She'll	He'll	It'll
1.						visit his family soon.
2.						speak English well in the future.
3.						be summer in a few months.
4.						start the party at 7 p.m.
5.						go to the store after class.
6.						get a better job next year.
7.						ride the bus to the library.



Language Focus: Likes and Dislikes + Gerunds or Infinitives

When we want to talk about actions that we like or don't like (reading, running, thinking, studying) there are *two different forms* we can use.

Cuando queremos hablar de acciones que nos gustan o no nos gustan (leer, correr, pensar, estudiar) hay dos formas diferentes que podemos usar.

	<u>Infinitive Verb</u>	<u>Verbo infinitivo</u>	Gerund (verb+ing)
(to read)	to read		reading
(to run)	to run		running
(to think)	to think		thinking
(to study)	to study		studying

We can say:

I like	+	Infinitive verb	OR	I like	+	Gerund
I don't like	+	Infinitive verb	OR	I don't like	+	Gerund
I like		to read.		I like		reading.
I don't like		to read.		I don't like		reading.
I like		to run.		I like		running.
I don't like		to run.		I don't like		running.



Language Focus: Verb Practice



For the following chart, write the correct form of the sentences in the empty boxes.

En la tabla siguiente, escriba la forma correcta de las oraciones en los recuadros vacíos.

Verb		I like +		I don't like +	
Infinitive	Gerund	Infinitive	Gerund	Infinitive	Gerund
to study	studying	I like to study.	I like studying.	I don't like to study.	I don't like studying.
to talk with him	talking	I like to talk with him		I don't like to talk with him.	
to visit family	visiting		I like visiting family.		I don't like visiting family.
to go shopping	going	I like to go shopping.			
to exercise	exercising			I don't like to exercise.	
to cook dinner	cooking				I don't like cooking dinner.



Language Focus: Likes and Dislikes



Practice saying out loud, emphasizing the language principles on the preceding pages.

Practique en voz alta, haciendo hincapié en los principios del idioma de las páginas anteriores.

Positive

I like broccoli.

We like reading.

She likes to sing.

Negative

I don't like broccoli.

We don't like reading.

She doesn't like to sing.



Language Focus: Practice Likes

Check if you like or dislike something. Then write it in a sentence.

Verifique si le gusta o disgusta algo. Luego escríbalo en una oración.

Like	Dislike		
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	popcorn	<u>I like popcorn</u>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	cooking	<u>I don't like* cooking</u>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	work	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	apples	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	studying history	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	cake	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	running	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	salad	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	sleeping	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	seafood	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	school	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	shopping	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	math	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	vacations	

*Dislike is seldomly used.



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Where can I find a library nearby?</p> <p>There is one around the corner.</p> | <p>2. Are there any restaurants in this area?</p> <p>There is an Italian restaurant and a Mexican restaurant 2 blocks north.</p> |
| <p>3. Thanks for the information.</p> <p>You're welcome, anytime.</p> | <p>4. How can I get to the nearest bus stop?</p> <p>It's on Main Street next to the grocery store.</p> |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.</p> | <p>Expression:</p> <p>Meaning:</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>anytime</p> <p>used in response to "thank you" to mean "you're welcome"</p> <p>Thanks for the information.
Anytime!</p> <p>Thanks for the information!
You're welcome!</p> |
| <p>2.</p> | <p>Expression:</p> <p>Meaning:</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>Meaning:</p> | <p>catch the bus / a cab / the train</p> <p>find the bus / a cab / the train</p> <p>Where can I catch a cab?</p> <p>Where can I find a cab?</p> |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

bus	<i>autobús</i>	taxi	<i>taxi</i>
bus station	<i>estación de autobuses</i>	train	<i>tren</i>
office	<i>oficina</i>	vacation	<i>vacación</i>

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Card 9A

Module 8	Dialog	Diálogo
New Person:	Excuse me, can you please tell me where the post office is?	<i>Disculpe, ¿me puede decir por favor dónde está la oficina de correos?</i>
Local:	Sure. You will go to the third stop light. Then you will turn right and go two blocks north. You'll find it on the left.	<i>Claro, vaya hasta el tercer semáforo, luego doble a la derecha y siga dos cuadras hacia el norte. La encontrará a la izquierda.</i>
New Person:	Thanks. I am also looking for a drugstore.	<i>Gracias. También estoy buscando una farmacia.</i>
Local:	From the post office, you will cross the street and go south down the street. It will be on your right.	<i>De la oficina de correos, cruce la calle y vaya hacia el sur. Estará a su derecha.</i>
New Person:	Thanks. And where is a good place to eat? I like pizza.	<i>Gracias. Y, ¿dónde hay un buen lugar para comer? Me gusta la pizza.</i>
Local:	There is a Pizza Shop next to the drugstore.	<i>Hay un negocio de pizzas al lado de la farmacia.</i>
New Person:	Great. I'll give it a try. Thanks again.	<i>Magnífico; lo intentaré. Gracias otra vez.</i>
Local:	You're welcome.	<i>De nada.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Card 9B



go	<i>ir</i>	go 2 miles	<i>vaya 3 kilómetros</i>
then	<i>luego</i>	then you'll see	<i>luego verá</i>
right	<i>derecha</i>	to the right	<i>a la derecha</i>
take a right	<i>dobles a la derecha</i>	make a right	<i>dobles a la derecha</i>
left	<i>izquierda</i>	to the left	<i>a la izquierda</i>
take a left	<i>dobles a la izquierda</i>	make a left	<i>dobles a la izquierda</i>
straight	<i>derecho</i>	go straight	<i>siga derecho</i>
street	<i>calle</i>	go two streets	<i>avance dos calles</i>
stop	<i>detener</i>	to the stop	<i>en la señal de</i>
signal	<i>alto</i>	to the signal	<i>en la señal</i>
corner	<i>esquina</i>	around the	<i>a la vuelta de</i>
kitty corner	<i>diagonal</i>	kitty corner to	<i>en diagonal a</i>
alongside	<i>junto a</i>	beside (next to)	<i>al lado de</i>
store	<i>tienda</i>	theater	<i>cine</i>

Module 10

BUYING A DRESS

Buying a Dress

10

(2 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives
Objetivos



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. use contractions for **will**.
- ☐ 2. talk about buying a dress.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Mrs. Jones:	Pardon me, we're looking for a dress for my daughter.	<i>Disculpe, estamos buscando un vestido para mi hija.</i>
Clerk:	What type are you looking for?	<i>¿Qué tipo de vestido está buscando?</i>
Mrs. Jones:	Something medium-priced in size 5 or 6.	<i>Algo con un precio promedio, talla 5 o 6.</i>
Clerk:	They would be over here.	<i>Esos estarían aquí.</i>
Mrs. Jones:	Could she try on this one?	<i>¿Puede ella probarse este?</i>
Clerk:	Sure, the dressing room is over there.	<i>Claro, el vestidor está ahí.</i>
Mrs. Jones:	Thanks, we'll be right back.	<i>Gracias, ya volvemos.</i>
• • • •		
Mrs. Jones:	We'll take this one.	<i>Llevaremos este.</i>
Clerk:	Will that be cash, credit, or debit card?	<i>¿Pagará con efectivo, tarjeta de crédito o de débito?</i>
Mrs. Jones:	Cash.	<i>Efectivo.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

-ry	try, cry, fry
-sh	cash, fish, dish
h-	here, hello, help
-x	six, box, mix
dr-	dress, drive, dry
-'re	we're, they're, you're
su-	sure, sugar
r-	room, right, radio
-ive	five, alive, drive
-ack	back, sack, pack
-er	daughter, over, water

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

t ____	c ____	f ____
ca ____	fi ____	di ____
____ ere	____ ello	____ elp
si ____	bo ____	mi ____
____ ess	____ ive	____ y
we ____	they ____	you ____
____ re	____ gar	
____ oom	____ ight	____ adio
f ____	al ____	dr ____
b ____	s ____	p ____
daught ____	ov ____	wat ____



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

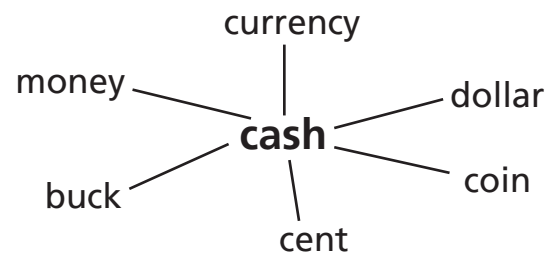
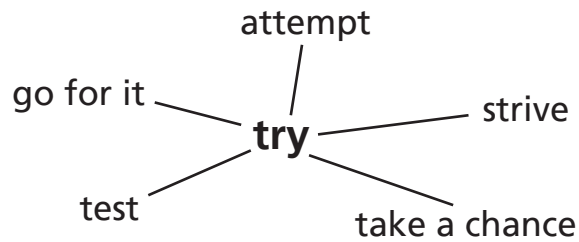
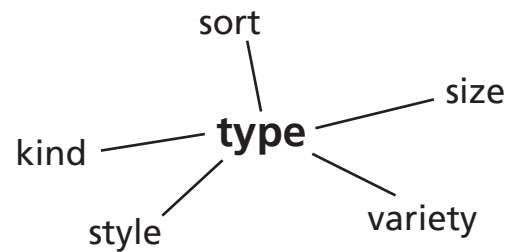
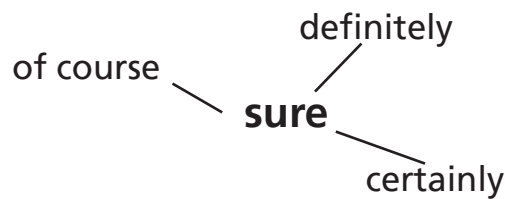
Word Rhyming Words

five	live	dive	survive	revive			
would	could	should	good				
right	bright	light	height	night	might	tight	sight
dress	mess	less	confess	guess	bless		
back	stack	lack	sack	black	rack		
type	hype	Skype	stereotype		typewriter		
over	Dover	clover	rover				



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| Over here • | • excuse me |
| my • | • anything |
| something • | • test |
| surely • | • This way |
| daughter • | • girl |
| price • | • belongs to me |
| type • | • fit |
| pardon me • | • cost |
| try on • | • sort |
| skirt • | • certainly |
| size • | • dress |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

Over here

This way



Listen, repeat, and write.

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

Writing Practice

Related Words

Writing Practice

over here

my

something

sure

daughter

price

type

pardon me

try on

skirt

size

this way

belongs to me

anything

certainly

girl

cost

sort

excuse me

test

dress

fit



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

Mrs. Jones: Pardon _____. We're _____ for a
_____ for _____ daughter.

Clerk: What _____ are you looking _____?

Mrs. Jones: Something _____ priced.

Clerk: They _____ be _____ here.

Mrs. Jones: _____ she try this one _____?

Clerk: Sure, the _____ room is over _____.

Mrs. Jones: Thanks. We'll be _____ back.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.
Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

1. What are you looking for? He wants
2. What type are you looking for?
3. Where is the dressing room?
4. Could she try this one on?
5. Where would size sixes be?
6. Who is this girl?

Learners write questions with **who**, **what**, **when**, **where**, **which**, and **why**. Instructors ask some questions and help learners ask questions and answer them.



From the dialog, circle the correct word.
En el diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta.

Write the complete sentence in pencil.
Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. (Were / We're) looking for a dress.
2. The dress is (far / for) (mine / my) daughter.
3. What type (our / are / or) you looking for?
4. (Something / Same thing) in size 6.
5. They (wood / would) be (over / oven) here.
6. (Cold / Could) she try on this (won / one)?
7. The dressing room is over (their / there).
8. (Well / We'll) be (right / light) back.
9. We'll take (these / this) one.
10. (Well / Will) that be (crash / cash)?

Instructors say one of the two or three alternative words and have the learners identify which word was said. Instructors help learners recognize the difference.



Long Form

We are looking for a dress.
 We will be looking for a dress.
 We are going to be right back.
 We will be right back.
 We are going to take this one.
 We will take this one.

Short form (Contraction)

We're looking for a dress.
 We'll be looking for a dress.
 We're going to be right back.
 We'll be right back.
 We're going to take this one.
 We'll take this one.

To Be

Long

Short

I am	→	I'm
he is	→	he's
she is	→	she's
it is	→	it's
you are	→	you're
they are	→	they're

Will

Long

Short

I will	→	I'll
he will	→	he'll
she will	→	she'll
it will	→	it'll
you will	→	you'll
they will	→	they'll

Role-play future tense with the 60 common verbs from the list in Module 6.



Underline the long form in each sentence. Then, rewrite each sentence using the short, or contracted, form.

1. He is studying English.
2. He will study English.
3. She is a learner.
4. She will be a instructor.
5. I am poor.
6. I will be rich.
7. You are young.

8. In the future, you will be old.
9. Right now, they are sad.
10. In the future, they will be happy.
11. Right now, it is cold.
12. In the future, it will be warm.
13. Right now, we are living in Utah.
14. In the future, we will live in New York.
15. Right now, they are strangers.
16. In the future, they will be friends.
17. Right now, you are small.
18. In the future, you will be big.
19. Right now, I am not hungry.
20. In the future, I will be hungry.
21. Right now, she is tired.
22. In the future, she will be rested.

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Language Focus: Extra Practice

Imagine your life in 10 years. Write 5 sentences that describe who you will be in 10 years. Use the long form and then rewrite each sentence using the short form.

Who will I be in 10 years? What will I be doing?

Long Form:

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Short Form:

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. How would you like to pay for that?
With credit. | 2. Do you accept checks?
Sorry, but we don't. |
| 3. Would you like a dressing room?
Yes, please. | 4. What size do you wear?
I usually wear size 6. |
| 5. Look at this one.
Oh, it's beautiful! Can I try it on? | 6. Would you like your receipt with
you or in the bag?
In the bag is fine. |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1. Expression | Try on |
| Meaning | Put on to check size and appearance |
| Example | I'll try on this one. |
| Meaning | I'll put on this one to see if I like it. |
| 2. Expression | Take it |
| Meaning | buy it / get it / purchase it |
| Example | We'll take it. |
| Meaning | We'll buy this one. |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Practice simple conversations with a partner about finding some clothes, trying them on, and buying them.

Practique conversaciones simples con un compañero sobre cómo encontrar algunas prendas de vestir, probárselas y comprarlas.



Future Tense—Sentence Practice

At Work with Supervisor or Other Employees

Optional Pronouns	Will + Verb Conjugations	Optional Prepositional Phrases
(I / You / We / They / He / She / It)	(arrive, come, go, eat, help, learn, laugh, listen, read, speak, stay, talk, teach, think, walk, write, study)	(to my / your / our / their / his / her home, at home, in the home, with family, to my / your / our / their / his / her family, with my / your / their / his / her family, with my / your / our / their / his / her children, to my / your / his wife, to my / your / her husband, with my / your / his wife, with my / your / her husband, to my / your / our / their / his / her friends, with my / your / our / their / his / her friends)
I	<u>will arrive</u>	<u>with John</u>
I	<u>will</u>	
You / We / They	<u>will</u>	
He / She / It	<u>will</u>	

Several learners write on the board where the activity is projected, or on a separate page, and say sentences using various subjects, proper conjugations, and appropriate prepositional phrases. After a learner says a proper sentence with good pronunciation, the rest of the class says the same sentence. Instructors help learners practice proper pronunciation.



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

medium	<i>mediano</i>	credit	<i>crédito</i>
check	<i>cheque</i>	debit	<i>débito</i>
mom	<i>mamá</i>	price	<i>precio</i>

Instructors explain the significance of cognates and demonstrate pronunciation.

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Card 10A

Module 10	Dialog	Diálogo
Mrs. Jones:	Pardon me, we're looking for a dress for my daughter.	<i>Disculpe, estamos buscando un vestido para mi hija.</i>
Clerk:	What type are you looking for?	<i>¿Qué tipo de vestido está buscando?</i>
Mrs. Jones:	Something medium-priced in size 5 or 6.	<i>Algo con un precio promedio, talla 5 o 6.</i>
Clerk:	They would be over here.	<i>Esos estarían aquí.</i>
Mrs. Jones:	Could she try on this one?	<i>¿Puede ella probarse este?</i>
Clerk:	Sure, the dressing room is over there.	<i>Claro, el vestidor está ahí.</i>
Mrs. Jones:	Thanks, we'll be right back.	<i>Gracias, ya volvemos.</i>
• • • •		
Mrs. Jones:	We'll take this one.	<i>Llevaremos este.</i>
Clerk:	Will that be cash, credit, or debit card?	<i>¿Pagará con efectivo, tarjeta de crédito o de débito?</i>
Mrs. Jones:	Cash.	<i>Efectivo.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Card 10B

money	<i>dinero</i>	check	<i>cheque</i>
cash	<i>efectivo</i>	cents	<i>centavos</i>
dollar	<i>dólar</i>	credit card	<i>tarjeta de crédito</i>
one dollar	<i>un dólar</i>	debit card	<i>tarjeta de débito</i>
five dollars	<i>cinco dólares</i>	fifty dollars	<i>cincuenta dólares</i>
ten dollars	<i>diez dólares</i>	one hundred dollars	<i>cien dólares</i>
twenty dollars	<i>veinte dólares</i>		

Module 11

BUYING APPLIANCES

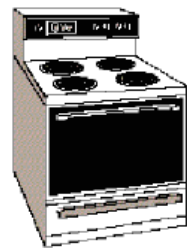
Buying Appliances

11

(2 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives
Objetivos



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. talk about buying appliances.
- ☐ 2. state colors.
- ☐ 3. identify measurements.
- ☐ 4. recognize prepositions of place.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.
Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Mrs. Nicholas:	Hi, I'm looking for a stove.	<i>Hola, estoy buscando una estufa/cocina.</i>
Clerk:	Do you want gas or electric?	<i>¿Desea que sea a gas o eléctrica?</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	Gas, and it can't be over thirty inches wide.	<i>A gas y no puede tener más de treinta pulgadas [76 cm] de ancho.</i>
Clerk:	Which color do you prefer?	<i>¿De qué color la prefiere?</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	White.	<i>Blanca.</i>
Clerk:	Here is a nice one, marked down.	<i>Aquí hay una linda, con precio reducido.</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	How much?	<i>¿Cuánto cuesta?</i>
Clerk:	Three hundred and forty-nine dollars.	<i>Trescientos cuarenta y nueve dólares.</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	How much does it cost to deliver?	<i>¿Cuánto cuesta el envío a domicilio?</i>
Clerk:	Nothing within the city limits.	<i>No cuesta nada dentro de los límites de la ciudad.</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	When can you deliver it?	<i>¿Cuándo la pueden enviar?</i>
Clerk:	Tomorrow afternoon.	<i>Mañana por la tarde.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

-ove	stove, rove, cove	st ____	r ____	c ____
de-	deliver, delay, delight	____ liver	____ lay	____ light
w-	want, with, walk	____ ant	____ ith	____ alk
-rr-	tomorrow, worry, sorrow	tomo ____ ow	wo ____ y	so ____ ow
wh-	which, white, when	____ ich	____ ite	____ en
-oo-	noon, spoon, moon	n ____ n	sp ____ n	m ____ n
-ark	marked, bark, dark	m ____ ed	b ____	d ____
-ine	nine, mine, fine	n ____	m ____	f ____
c-	city, circle, cell	____ ity	____ ircle	____ ell
c-	cost, color, cup	____ ost	____ olor	____ up

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

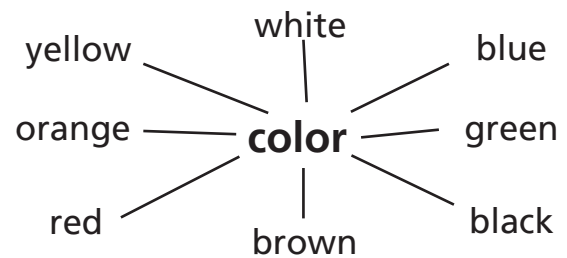
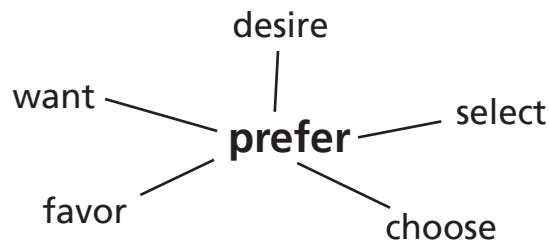
Escuche y repita despacio.

<u>Word</u>	<u>Rhyming Words</u>						
thirty	dirty	flirty					
wide	glide	hide	pride	ride	side	stride	tide
which	rich	stitch	ostrich				
white	bite	kite	rite	site			
mark	bark	Clark	dark	park			
three	free	knee	Lee	see	spree	tree	
cost	lost	frost					
city	pity	activity	reality	ability			



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| city • | • want |
| inches • | • large town |
| electric • | • color |
| marked down • | • measurement |
| white • | • range |
| nice • | • reduced |
| stove • | • power |
| prefer • | • fuel |
| wide • | • good |
| gas • | • big |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

city

large town

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Listen, repeat, and write.

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

Writing Practice

Related Words

Writing Practice

stove

gas

electric

over

inches

wide

which

nice

marked down

thirty

white

prefer

city

afternoon

range

fuel (natural)

power

more than

measure of length

broad, big

what one

good

reduced, on sale

30

color

want, desire

large town

from 12–6 p.m.



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

Mrs. Nicholas: Hi, I'm _____ for a _____.

Clerk: Do you want _____ or _____?

Clerk: Here's a _____ one on _____.

Mrs. Nicholas: How _____ is _____?

Mrs. Nicholas: When can you _____ it?

Mrs. Nicholas: How _____ does _____ cost to deliver?



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.
Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

1. What are you looking for? We're looking for
2. What type are you looking for?
3. What color do you prefer?
4. How wide can the stove be?
5. Which stove is on sale?
6. How much does it cost?
7. How much does it cost to deliver?
8. Where do you live?

Learners write questions with **who**, **what**, **when**, **where**, **which**, and **why**. Instructors ask them some questions and help them ask questions and answer them.



From the dialog, circle the correct word.
Del diálogo, haga un círculo en la palabra correcta.

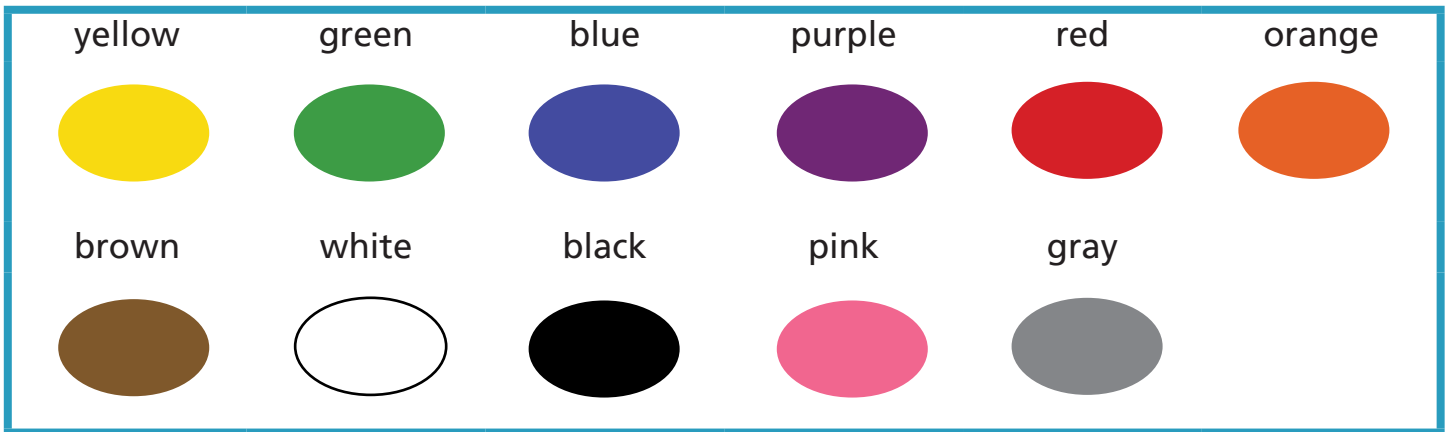
Write the complete sentence in pencil.
Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. (High / Hi), I'm (looking / lacking) for a stove.
2. (Dew / Do) you (won't / want) gas or electric?
3. Which (collar / color) do (you / you're) prefer?
4. (Hear / Here) is a (niece / nice) (won / one / on).
5. (Its / It's) marked (done / down).
6. How (munch / much / match)?
7. (Tree / Three) hundred dollars.
8. How much does it (cast / cost) to deliver?
9. (Nothing / no thing) within the city limits.

Instructors say one of the two or three alternative words and have the learners identify which word was said. Instructors help learners recognize the difference.



Language Focus: Colors



Instructors point to something in the room and ask the learners to say the color, if they can, in a full sentence.



Language Focus: Practice Long and Short Forms

height

length

width

depth

How **high** is it?

How **wide** is it?

How **long** is it?

How **deep** is it?

What is the **height**?

What is the **width**?

What is the **length**?

What is the **depth**?

<u>Unit</u>	<u>Abbreviations</u>	<u>Equivalent</u>
1 inch	1 in. 1"	
1 foot	1 ft. 1'	= 12 inches
1 yard	1 yd.	= 3 feet
1 mile	1 mi.	= 5,280 feet

Note: When measuring boxes, length is the longer measurement and width is the shorter measurement. Height is always vertical. Depth refers to the measurement extending inside the item from the user's point of entrance, be it vertical or horizontal.

Instructors point to objects in the room and ask the questions. Learners answer the questions.



Common ways of asking questions regarding length, width, height, and depth

Question

Answer with sentences

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. How long is the ruler? | 12" | <u>The ruler is twelve inches long.</u> |
| 2. How long is the yardstick? | 3' | <u>The yardstick is</u> |
| 3. How wide is the stove? | 30" | |
| 4. How high is the stove? | 4' | |
| 5. How deep is the oven? | 28" | |



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Can I help you?
Yes, I'm looking for an oven. | 2. Do you have any stoves that are 40 inches wide?
Yes, we have several over here.. |
| 3. What color appliance are you looking for?
Either black or white. | 4. Excuse me, how deep is this oven?
It's about 25 inches deep. |
| 5. How much does delivery cost?
It's free within city limits, and \$50 outside of the city. | 6. When can you deliver this stove?
We can deliver it this afternoon. |

Instructors explain the meaning, demonstrate pronunciation, and have the learners repeat the sentences.



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | | |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. | Expression | marked down |
| | Meaning | reduced price, on sale, less expensive |
| | Example | Do you have anything that's marked down? |
| | Meaning | Do you have anything that is less expensive? |
| 2. | Expression | within city limits |
| | Meaning | inside of the city |
| | Example | Is there an appliance store within city limits? |
| | Meaning | Is there an appliance store inside of the city? |



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

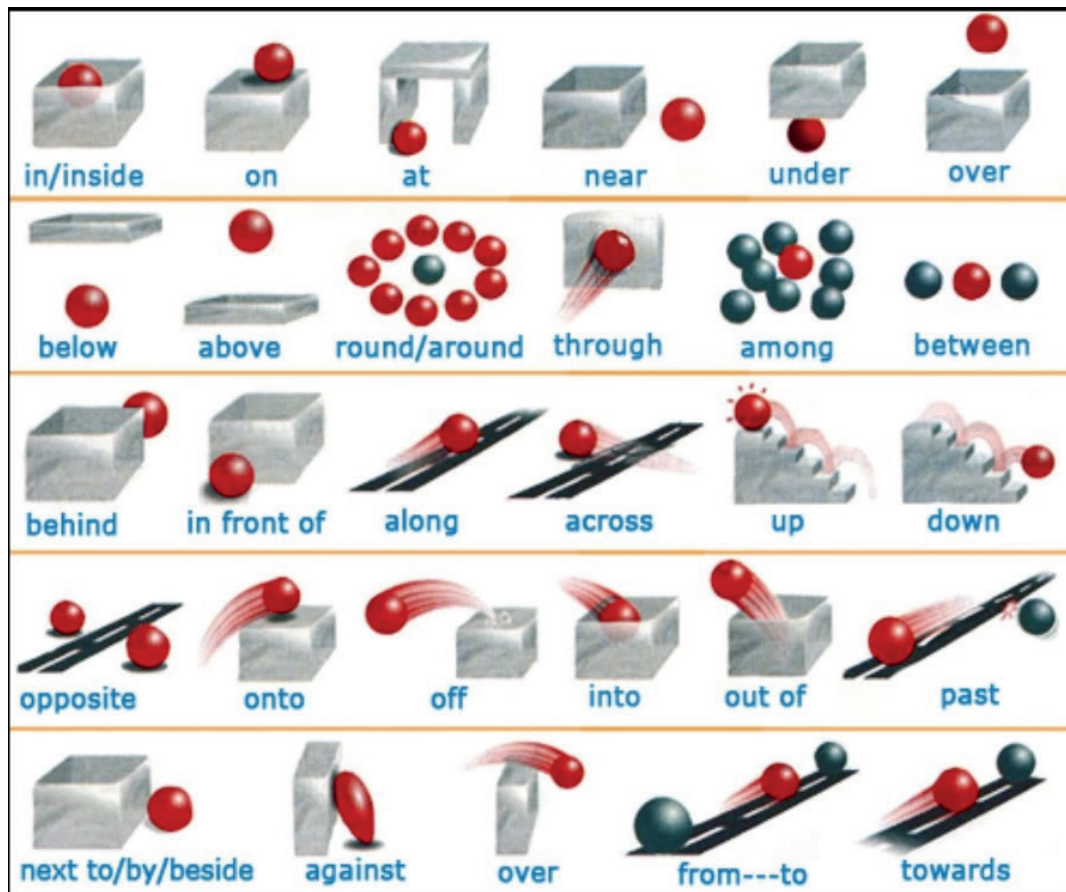
Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

oven	<i>horno</i>	refrigerator	<i>refrigerador</i>
microwave	<i>microondas</i>	delivery	<i>entrega</i>
measurements	<i>medidas</i>		

Prepositions of Place



In: I have lived in Mountain View.

On: I sit on the sofa.

At: I arrived at the airport last night.

Near: She lives near the school.

Under: The shoes are under the bed.

Over: The window is over the door.

Below: They live on the floor below.

Above: The picture hangs above the fireplace.

Around: The library is around the corner.

Through: We walk through the park.

Among: The flowers grow among the trees.

Between: It is between the cafe and the park.

Behind: The book is behind you.

In front of: The instructor stands in front of the class.

Along: The bus drives along the road.

Across: I see the mailman across the street.

Up: They are walking up the stairs.

Down: Come down from the tree!

Opposite: The park is opposite the church.

Onto: The cat jumped onto the sofa.

Off: She took off her sweater.

Into: Tom climbed into bed.

Out of: She is coming out of the beauty parlor.

Past: Go past the park and turn left.

Next to: Please sit next to him.

Against: The man is leaning against the wall.

Over: The horse jumps over the fence.

From . . . to: I will fly from home to Mexico tomorrow.

Towards: I sit towards the back of the room.

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Card 11A

Module 11	Dialog	Diálogo
Mrs. Nicholas:	Hi, I'm looking for a stove.	<i>Hola, estoy buscando una estufa/cocina.</i>
Clerk:	Do you want gas or electric?	<i>¿Desea que sea a gas o eléctrica?</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	Gas, and it can't be over thirty inches wide.	<i>A gas y no puede tener más de treinta pulgadas [76 cm] de ancho.</i>
Clerk:	Which color do you prefer?	<i>¿De qué color la prefiere?</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	White.	<i>Blanca.</i>
Clerk:	Here is a nice one, marked down.	<i>Aquí hay una linda, con precio reducido.</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	How much?	<i>¿Cuánto cuesta?</i>
Clerk:	Three hundred and forty-nine dollars.	<i>Trescientos cuarenta y nueve dólares.</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	How much does it cost to deliver?	<i>¿Cuánto cuesta el envío a domicilio?</i>
Clerk:	Nothing within the city limits.	<i>No cuesta nada dentro de los límites de la ciudad.</i>
Mrs. Nicholas:	When can you deliver it?	<i>¿Cuándo la pueden enviar?</i>
Clerk:	Tomorrow afternoon.	<i>Mañana por la tarde.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Card 11B



color	<i>color</i>	high	<i>alto</i>
yellow	<i>amarillo</i>	wide	<i>ancho</i>
green	<i>verde</i>	long	<i>largo</i>
blue	<i>azul</i>	deep	<i>profundidad</i>
purple	<i>morado</i>	mile	<i>milla</i>
red	<i>rojo</i>	yard	<i>yarda</i>
orange	<i>anaranjado</i>	foot	<i>pie</i>
brown	<i>marrón</i>	inch	<i>pulgada</i>
white	<i>blanco</i>		
black	<i>negro</i>		
pink	<i>rosa</i>		
gray	<i>gris</i>		

Module 12

BUYING GROCERIES

Buying Groceries

12

(2 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives
Objetivos



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

☐ 1. talk about buying groceries.

☐ 2. express amounts by quantity.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.
Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



Dialog	Diálogo
Brad: What do we need?	<i>¿Qué necesitamos?</i>
Angie: Cereal for breakfast, bread and meat for lunch, and something for dinner.	<i>Cereal para el desayuno, pan y carne para el almuerzo, y algo para la cena.</i>
Brad: Here are the cereals. Do you want a large or small box?	<i>Aquí está el cereal. ¿Quieres una caja grande o pequeña?</i>
Angie: Large. We use it up fast. Please go get a gallon of milk also.	<i>Grande. Lo consumimos rápido. Por favor trae también un galón de leche.</i>
Brad: What type of meat do you want?	<i>¿Qué tipo de carne deseas?</i>
Angie: I like ham. Now, what about dinner?	<i>Me gusta el jamón. Ahora, ¿qué necesitamos para la cena?</i>
Brad: Let's have hamburgers on the grill.	<i>Comamos hamburguesas a la parrilla.</i>
Angie: Good idea! Hamburgers and fries.	<i>¡Buena idea! Hamburguesas y papas fritas.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

br- breakfast, bread, break

gr- grill, great, groceries

l- lunch, large, library

a- about, again, ago

-i- dinner, milk, grill

-v- have, love, above

-ike like, bike, hike

fr- fries, front, from

h- here, have, hamburger

wh- what, why, where

-ow now, how, wow

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que falten y haga los sonidos.

___ eakfast ___ ead ___ eak

___ ill ___ eat ___ oceries

___ unch ___ arge ___ ibrary

___ bout ___ gain ___ go

d ___ nner m ___ lk gr ___ ll

ha ___ e lo ___ e abo ___ e

l ___ b ___ h ___

___ ies ___ ont ___ om

___ ere ___ ave ___ amburger

___ at ___ y ___ ere

n ___ h ___ w ___

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

Word Rhyming Words

bread dead head lead spread stead

lunch bunch hunch munch punch

dinner winner sinner

large barge charge

use fuse abuse refuse cruse

ham cram dam Pam ram Sam slam yam

now how now brown cow wow

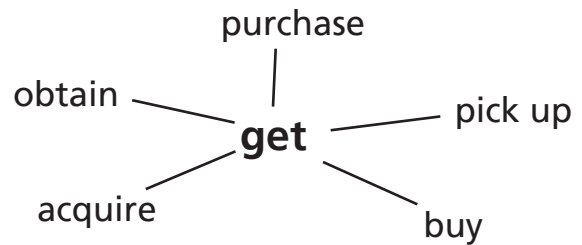
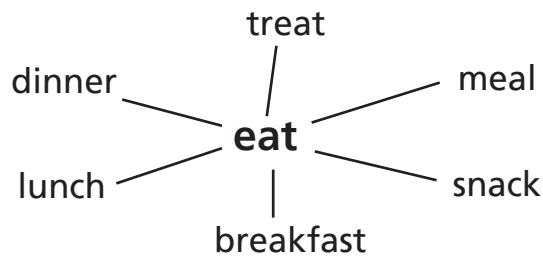
grill drill frill fill gill hill kill ill pill sill still will

fries cries dies lies pies ties



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacer coincidir palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| dinner • | • big |
| large • | • meal |
| french fries • | • eat it |
| use it up • | • carton |
| box • | • noon meal |
| lunch • | • potatoes |
| bread • | • 4 quarts |
| gallon • | • loaves |
| milk • | • cooking tool |
| grill • | • drink |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

dinner

meal

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Listen, repeat, and write.

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

Writing Practice

Related Words

Writing Practice

cereal

breakfast

lunch

dinner

bread

meat

gallon

ham

hamburger

grill

french fries

box

use it up

milk

grain

morning meal

noon meal

evening meal

loaves

sliced meat

4 quarts

smoked pork

ground meat

cooking tool

fried potatoes

carton

eat it, consume

drink



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

Brad: What _____ we _____?

Angie: We'll have _____ for _____.

Brad: Do you want a _____ or _____ box?

Angie: Please go _____ a _____ of milk.

Brad: Let's have _____ and french _____.

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.

Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

1. What do we need? We need
2. Where is the cereal?
3. What type of meat do you like?
4. Do you want a large or small box?
5. What's for breakfast?
6. What's for lunch?
7. What's for dinner?
8. Do you like it hot or cold?

Learners write questions with **who**, **what**, **when**, **where**, **which**, and **why**. Instructors ask them some questions and help them ask questions and answer them



Put a slash (/) between the words and write the complete sentence.

Ponga una barra (/) entre las palabras y escriba la oración completa.

1. What/do/we/need?
2. Cerealforbreakfast,breadand meatforlunch.
3. Herearethecereals.
Doyouwantalargeorsmallbox?
4. Large.Weuseitupfast.
5. Pleasegogetagallonofmilkalso.
6. Whattypeofmeat
doyouwant?
7. Ilikeham.
Now,whataboutdinner?
8. Let'shavehamburgersonthegrill.
9. Goodidea!Hamburgersandfries.
10. Doyoulikegrilledhamburgers?



Language Focus: Amounts by Quantity

A gallon of milk, juice, water

A quart of milk, juice, water

A pint of cream

A half gallon of ice cream, milk, juice, water

A brick of cheese

A dozen eggs, cookies, donuts, rolls, buns

A bunch of grapes, bananas, strawberries

A head of lettuce, cabbage, broccoli

A slice of bread, ham, cheese

A loaf of bread

A pound of butter, cheese, beef

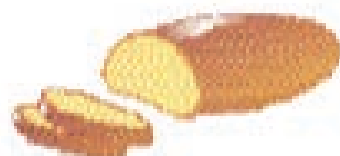
A pound of fish, meat, hamburger, chicken

A couple (2) of fish, cookies, bananas

A clove of garlic

A cob of corn

Some juice, milk, potatoes, apples, candy,
and so on (not a specific amount)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Language Focus: Asking for Amounts

Item	Full Sentence:
1. lettuce	<u>I would like a head of lettuce.</u>
2. milk	
3. potatoes	
4. cereal	
5. pickles	
6. bread	
7. cheese	
8. eggs	
9. water	
10. ham	
11. chicken	
12. rolls	
13. peaches	
14. noodles	
15. tuna fish	
16. bananas	
17. flour	
18. fish	
19. jam	
20. hamburger	

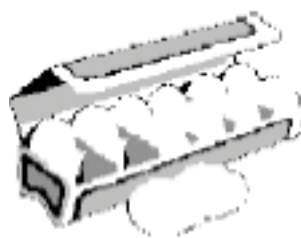
Instructors and assistant instructors may want to have pictures or items from the list. Then learners could select something from a display and say a sentence about it.

Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Language Focus: Amounts by Container

- A jar of peanut butter, pickles, jam, jelly
- A box of oranges, apples, cereal
- A carton of milk, eggs
- A bag of potatoes, apples, candy, nuts
- A package of noodles, meat, cookies
- A can of shortening, soup, tuna fish
- A jug of water
- A bottle of (soda) pop, water, lemon juice
- A container of salt, pepper, spice
- A bushel of apples, tomatoes, corn
- A sack of flour, sugar, salt
- A basket of fruit, peaches
- A case of strawberries, canned fruit
- A cup of raspberries, blueberries, noodles



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. What should we buy?
We need some fresh fruit. | 2. How much milk do we need?
A few gallons. |
| 3. Do we need a jar of pickles?
No, we still have one at home. | 4. How about a loaf of bread?
Yes. Get two loaves, please. |
| 5. I love peaches.
Me too. They taste delicious. | |



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Expression | Use it up |
| Meaning | Eat it all. / Finish it. |
| Example | We used it up fast. |
| Meaning | We ate it all fast. |
| 2. Expression | What about ____ ? |
| Meaning | What should we do for ____ ? |
| Example | What about breakfast? |
| Meaning | What should we do for breakfast? |

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Card 12A

Module 12	Dialog	Diálogo
Brad:	What do we need?	¿Qué necesitamos?
Angie:	Cereal for breakfast, bread and meat for lunch, and something for dinner.	Cereal para el desayuno, pan y carne para el almuerzo, y algo para la cena.
Brad:	Here are the cereals. Do you want a large or small box?	Aquí está el cereal. ¿Quieres una caja grande o pequeña?
Angie:	Large. We use it up fast. Please go get a gallon of milk also.	Grande. Lo consumimos rápido. Por favor trae también un galón de leche.
Brad:	What type of meat do you want?	¿Qué tipo de carne deseas?
Angie:	I like ham. Now, what about dinner?	Me gusta el jamón. Ahora, ¿qué necesitamos para la cena?
Brad:	Let's have hamburgers on the grill.	Comamos hamburguesas a la parrilla.
Angie:	Good idea! Hamburgers and fries.	¡Buena idea! Hamburguesas y papas fritas.

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Card 12B

Food/measurements	Translation	Food/measurements	Translation
container	recipiente	slice of bread	rodaja de pan
breakfast	desayuno	loaf of bread	hogaza de pan
lunch	almuerzo	pound	libra
dinner	cena	meat	carne
box	caja	fish	pescado
gallon	galón	cookies	galletas
quart of milk	cuarto de galón de leche	bananas	bananas
pint	pinta	cob of corn	mazorca
brick of cheese	bloque de queso	juice	jugo
dozen eggs	docena de huevos	milk	leche
bunch of grapes	racimo de uvas	potatoes	papas (patatas)
head of lettuce	lechuga	apples	manzanas
		candy	golosinas

Module 13

LEARNING ENGLISH FROM FILMS

Learning English from Films 13

(3 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives *Objetivos*

At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. identify common verbs in a small video.
- ☐ 2. identify commonly used words in a small video.

Many language instructors and learners agree that a very effective way to learn a language is with videos and movies. Films provide easy access to language content and settings. Watching films uses both audio and visual paths to learning language. It presents language in full cultural context with real people and settings, providing a whole-language experience. Both the verbal and nonverbal content are present, focusing the learner's attention on the actors, their language, and their actions. Films lower the learner's affective filter by capturing attention, increasing motivation, instilling self-confidence, and reducing anxiety.



Films allow for a prespeaking or listening phase and some limited reading. When the instructor presents these passive skills first, the learner can ease into the language learning process in preparation for developing the active skills of speaking and writing.

Next to real-life language experiences with native speakers, films provide the best exposure to language in a non-contrived context.



Advance Organizer for Teaching ESL–EFL Using Films

The learning process outlined here is time-tested and effective.

1. Give a brief introduction to the film: title, type (fact, fiction), setting, main characters, several interesting or key points of the story. For the example used in this lesson: President Gordon B. Hinckley tells a story of an older boy and his young companion.

- a. The boys find an old coat and a badly worn pair of shoes by the roadside.
- b. What happens with the shoes?
- c. What is the farmer's reaction?
- d. How do the boys feel?

Explain that the film contains many of the common verbs.

2. Play the film. The example is at <http://www.mormonchannel.org/video/mormon-messages?v=911029440001>.
- a. Ask learners for any new sound, word, phrase, or sentence they heard.
 - b. As learners provide these, the instructor puts them into context, gives a similar word or briefly explains meanings, models them, and asks learners to repeat the words or phrases. This should be a quick activity.
 - c. Replay the film.



Use several of each type of question. Question all main points. Allow learners to ask some of the questions.

Learners respond to “yes” questions on the main points:

Instructor: President Hinckley tells a story? Learner: Yes.

Learners respond to “no” questions on the main points:

Instructor: President Hinckley reads a story? Learner: No.

Learners respond to fade-out questions or statements:

Instructor: President Hinckley tells a . . . ? Learner: story.

Learners respond to inquisitive questions on the main points:

Instructor: What does President Hinckley tell? Learner: A story.

Learners respond to indirect questions:

Instructor: John, ask Mary what President Hinckley tells. John: Mary, what does President Hinckley tell?

Mary: A story.

Instructor: John, what did Mary say? John: A story.

Learners respond to direct commands:

Instructor: John, tell Mary that President Hinckley tells a story. John: Mary, President Hinckley tells a story.

Instructor: Mary, what did John say? Mary: President Hinckley tells a story.

Learners, with instructor’s help, reconstruct a selected part or two of the film:

Do this sentence-by-sentence in the correct order. The instructor prompts as needed.

Learners respond to direct questions based on the story:

Instructor: Where did President Hinckley find the story? Learner: In a book his father had published.

Instructor: What did his family do together? Learner: They sang, prayed, listened together.

Instructor: What stories did his mother read to them? Learner: Book of Mormon stories.

Instructor: How did his father tell them stories? Learner: Out of his memory.

Note: From here on, most, if not all, questions can be asked in past or present tense. It would be good practice to go through the story once in present tense and once in past tense and even to alternate as seems natural.

Instructor: Where are (were) the two boys walking?

Learner: Along a road.

Instructor: What do (did) they find on the side of the road?

Learner: An old pair of shoes.



Homework Reading and Practice

1. Replay film from <http://www.mormonchannel.org/video/mormon-messages?v=911029440001>.
 - a. Give learners a copy of the Homework Learning Activities. Read (normally) each paragraph aloud while learners listen and read the script silently.
 - b. Learners then take turns reading aloud. This should be a quick activity.
 - c. Explain the Homework Learning Activities and assign learners to complete them.
2. Have the learners write a sentence or two as dictated by a instructor. Or, dictate several questions and have the learners write the questions and their answers. The learners' language levels should be accommodated and slightly challenged.
 - a. Ask two or three learners to write their responses on the blackboard during this exercise.
 - b. Walk around and put a check mark above any errors for learners to correct.
 - c. Finally, ask learners to provide answers as needed.
3. Treat each paragraph in the story with the steps in 2.a–c. A long story will take a long time to treat each paragraph this way, so you may choose to only treat a few paragraphs.



In-Class and Homework Assignments

Asignaciones para la clase y para la casa



President Gordon B. Hinckley tells a story of an older boy and his young companion. The boys find an old coat and a badly worn pair of shoes by the roadside.

What happens with the shoes?

What is the farmer's reaction?

How do the boys feel?



In-Class and Homework Learning Activity

Actividad de aprendizaje para la clase y para la casa

- 1 Watch film at
<http://www.mormonchannel.org/video/mormon-messages?v=911029440001>
- 2 Watch film and "shadow talk" what you hear.
- 3 Listen to the film while reading the script below.
- 4 Complete the learning activities below the script.



We sang together. We prayed together. We listened quietly while Mother read Bible and Book of Mormon stories. Father told us stories out of his memory.

I still remember one of those stories. I found it recently while going through a book he had published some years ago. Listen to it.

An older boy and his young companion were walking along a road which lead through a field. They saw an old coat and a badly worn pair of men's shoes by the roadside. And in the distance they saw the owner working in the field. The younger boy suggested that they hide the shoes, conceal themselves, and watch the perplexity on the owner's face when he returned.

The older boy thought that would not be so good. He said, "This owner must be a very poor man from the looks of his clothes."

So after talking the matter over, at his suggestion, they concluded to try another experiment. Instead of hiding the shoes, they would put a silver dollar in each one and see what the owner did when he discovered the money.

So that's what they did.

Pretty soon the man returned from the field, put on his coat, slipped one foot into his shoe, felt something hard, took it out, and found a silver dollar. Wondrous surprise shone upon his face.

He looked at the dollar again and again, turned around and could see nobody, then proceeded to put on the other shoe, when to his great surprise, he found another dollar.

His feelings overcame him.

He knelt down and offered aloud a prayer of thanksgiving, in which he spoke of his wife being sick and helpless and his children without bread. He fervently thanked the Lord for this bounty from unknown hands, and he invoked the blessings of heaven upon those who had given him this needed help.

The boys remained hidden until he had gone.

They'd been touched by his prayer and felt something warm within their hearts. As they left to walk down the road, one said to the other, "Now, really, don't you have a good feeling?"



Fill in the blanks with the missing words from the story script.

Complete los espacios en blanco con las palabras que faltan del guion.

We _____ together. We _____ together. We _____ quietly while _____ read Bible and Book of Mormon _____. Father _____ us stories out of his _____.

I still _____ one of those stories. I _____ it recently while _____ through a _____ he had published some _____ ago. Listen to _____.

An older _____ and his young companion _____ walking along a _____ which lead through a field. They _____ an old coat and a badly worn _____ of men's shoes by the _____. And in the _____ they saw the _____ working in the field. The younger _____ suggested that they _____ the shoes, conceal themselves, and _____ the perplexity on the owner's _____ when he returned.

The older boy _____ that would not be so good. He _____, "This owner must _____ a very poor _____ from the looks of his _____."

So after _____ the matter over, at his suggestion, they _____ to try another _____. Instead of hiding the shoes, _____ would put a

silver _____ in each one and _____ what the owner _____ when he discovered the _____.

So _____ what they _____.

Pretty _____ the man returned _____ the field, put on his _____, slipped one _____ into his shoe, felt something _____, took it out, and _____ a silver dollar. Wondrous _____ shone upon _____ face.

He _____ at the dollar again and _____, turned around and could _____ nobody, then proceeded to put on the _____ shoe, when to his great _____, he found _____ dollar.

His feelings _____ him.

He knelt _____ and offered aloud a _____ of thanksgiving, in which he _____ of his _____ being sick _____ helpless and his children _____ bread. He fervently _____ the Lord for this bounty from unknown _____, and he invoked _____ blessings of heaven upon those who had _____ him this needed _____.

The boys _____ hidden until he had _____.

They'd _____ touched by his prayer and felt _____ warm within their _____. As _____ left to walk _____ the road, one said to the _____, "Now, _____, don't you _____ a good feeling?"



Part A

Parte A

Write your responses to the following questions.

Escriba las respuestas a las preguntas siguientes.

Film:

Date:

1. Character Description

List your favorite character in this film and describe him or her—good, bad, funny, serious, and so on. Also, list any other characters you would like to include.

2. Interactions

Describe interactions and relationships between characters in this film.

3. Conflicts, Conditions, Obstacles

Describe any brave or noble acts, difficulties, or settings of the characters in the film.

4. Most Interesting Part

Describe the most interesting part of this film for you and state why you liked it.

5. Expressions and Idioms and Their Meanings

List any expressions or idioms you found in this film. Write their meanings. (For help, you can search for idioms at <http://oels.byu.edu/learner/idioms/idiomsmain.html>. If available, you can also ask a native speaker of English.)

6. Your Personal Observations (Answer the following questions.)

- a. Did you like this film? Why or why not?
- b. What did you like most about this film?
- c. How did this film make you feel?
- d. What have you learned from this film?
- e. Do you have any other comments on this film?



Part B (to improve listening, speaking, reading, writing, and comprehension)

Parte B (para mejorar la comprensión oral, la expresión oral, la expresión escrita y la comprensión)

Write your answers to these questions. Say the words aloud as you write them.

Escriba las respuestas a estas preguntas. Diga las palabras mientras las escribe.

- 1. When President Hinckley was a boy, what did he and his family do together?
- 2. What did their mother read to them?
- 3. Where did President Hinckley find the story he tells in this film?
- 4. Where were the two boys walking?
- 5. What did they find on the side of the road?
- 6. What was the person they saw in the distance doing?

7. What did the younger boy suggest they do?
8. What did the older boy think about this suggestion or plan?
9. What did the older boy say about the owner of the clothes and shoes?
10. After talking it over, what did the two boys conclude?
11. What did the man do when he returned from the field?
12. What did he feel when he slipped one foot into his shoe?
13. What did he find when he took his foot out of the shoe?
14. What was his reaction, and what did he do?
15. What happened when he put on his other shoe?
16. What overcame him?
17. What did he do next?
18. What did he speak of in his prayer?
19. For what did he thank the Lord?
20. On whom did he invoke a blessing?
21. How did this experience affect the two boys?
22. As they walked away, what was the final comment the older boy made to the younger boy?

Module 14

GETTING A RIDE

Getting a Ride

14

(3 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives
Objetivos



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. ask for help.
- ☐ 2. recognize the modal verbs: **could**, **would**, **should**, and **might**.
- ☐ 3. say phrases using **could**, **would**, **should**, and **might**.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.
Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Tom:	Hi, this is Tom. Would you do me a favor?	<i>Hola, soy Tom. ¿Podrías hacerme un favor?</i>
Richard:	Sure. How can I help you?	<i>Claro. ¿Cómo puedo ayudarte?</i>
Tom:	My car is in the repair shop and I would like to go to the meeting on Thursday night.	<i>Tengo el auto en el taller y me gustaría ir a la reunión el jueves por la noche.</i>
Richard:	No problem. The meeting starts at 7:00. What time do you think we should leave your house in order to be on time?	<i>No hay problema. La reunión empieza a las 7:00. ¿A qué hora crees que deberíamos salir de tu casa para llegar a tiempo?</i>
Tom:	I think 6:40 would be okay. Does that work for you?	<i>Creo que a las 18:40 h sería una buena hora. ¿Te va bien?</i>
Richard:	Sure. See you then.	<i>Claro. Hasta entonces.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

f- favor, free, face

h- help, home, heat

-ur- sure, fur, purr

c- car, court, care

-air repair, pair, stair

m- meeting, mart, male

st- start, stare, stop

-ve leave, save, brave

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que falten y haga los sonidos.

___ avor ___ ree ___ ace

___ elp ___ ome ___ eat

s ___ e f ___ p ___ r

___ ar ___ ourt ___ are

rep ___ p ___ st ___

___ eeting ___ art ___ ale

___ art ___ are ___ op

lea ___ sa ___ bra ___



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacerlas coincidir con palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|----------------|------------------------|
| favor • | • vehicle |
| help • | • assistance, help |
| sure • | • so that |
| car • | • depart |
| repair shop • | • serve, assist |
| meeting • | • okay |
| start • | • mechanic |
| leave • | • fit in your schedule |
| in order to • | • appointment |
| work for you • | • begin |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

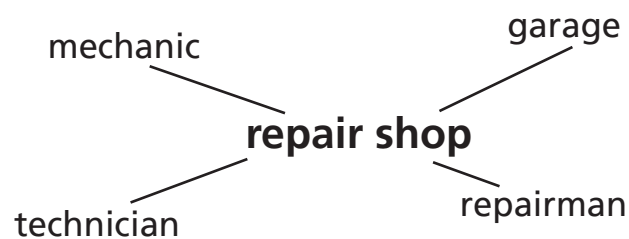
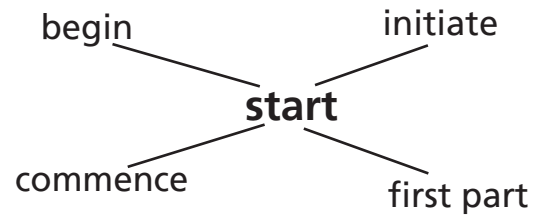
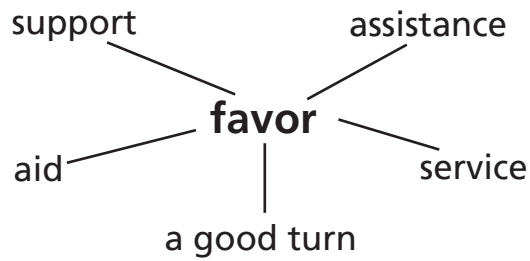
favor

assistance, help



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

<u>Word</u>	<u>Rhyming Words</u>			
favor	flavor	savor	braver	
sure	pure	cure	assure	
shop	hop	drop	pop	cop
start	heart	part	chart	cart
house	mouse	spouse	louse	
time	crime	lime	dime	



Listen, repeat, and write.

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

Writing Practice

Related Words

Writing Practice

favor

help

sure

car

repair shop

meeting

start

leave

in order to

work for you

assistance, help

serve, assist

okay

vehicle

mechanic

appointment

begin

depart

so that

fit in your schedule



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

Tom: Would _____ a
_____?

Richard: Sure. How can I _____?

Tom: My _____ is in the _____ shop! _____
_____ to go to the _____ on Thursday
_____.

Richard: What _____ do you _____ we _____
leave your house in _____ to be on _____?

Tom: Does that _____ for _____?



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.

Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

1. Can I ask a favor? Sure. What do you need?
2. Where is your car?
3. What time should we leave your house?
4. When is the meeting?
5. If we leave at 6 p.m., does that work for you?



From the dialog, circle the correct word.

Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta.

Write the complete sentence in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz la oración completa.

1. (Should / Would) you do me a (favor / flaver)?
2. Sure. How can I (help / heap) you?
3. My (car / care) is in the repair (shop / chop).
4. I would (lake / like) to go to the meeting on Thursday (light / night).
5. The meeting (stirs / starts) at 7:00.
6. Does that (ware / work) for you?

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Language Focus: Conditional Tense— Modals **could**, **would**, **should**, and **might**



could + verb <i>podría</i>	I	I could help if you need it.	Purpose: express capacity
	You	You could try a different book.	
	We	We could watch a movie.	
	They	They could go for a walk.	
	He / She / It	He could help another learner.	
would + verb <i>[condición]</i>	I	I would like a different one.	Purpose: express desire and intention
	You	You would enjoy the movie.	
	We	We would have a good time.	
	They	They would like to go to a movie.	
	He / She / It	She would learn a lot in the class.	
should + verb <i>debería</i>	I	I should call them again.	Purpose: express obligation
	You	You should go to school today.	
	We	We should talk to our neighbors.	
	They	They should be quiet.	
	He / She / It	He should practice in the book.	
might + verb <i>[condición]</i>	I	I might visit you today.	Purpose: express possibility
	You	You might try to be nice.	
	We	We might go to a movie later.	
	They	It will rain. They might get wet.	
	He / She / It	He might go to Italy this summer.	



Vocabulary Practice (modals **could** and **would**) *Práctica de vocabulario (verbos modales **could** y **would**)*

Circle **could** or **would** for each sentence.

*Trace un círculo alrededor de **could** o **would** en cada frase.*

- I (**could** / **would**) give you a ride.
- You (**could** / **would**) like the movie. It is really funny.
- She (**could** / **would**) have a fun time at the party.
- I (**could** / **would**) not go to school today because I was sick.
- They (**could** / **would**) not like the book because it is not interesting.

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Vocabulary Practice (modals **should** and **might**)

*Práctica de vocabulario (verbos modales **should** y **might**)*

Write **should** or **might** for each sentence.

*Escriba **should** o **might** en cada frase.*

1. I _____ go home now. It is 9:00 p.m.
2. I don't know . . . He _____ like that shirt. I think he likes that kind.
3. We _____ go to a movie later, but we are not sure if we can.
4. She _____ do her homework every day.
5. They _____ go to Japan this fall if they can.



Language Focus: Role Play

With a partner, create your own conversation for the situations below. Use the correct modal in the conversation. Perform your conversation in front of the class.

Con la ayuda de un compañero, cree su propia conversación para las situaciones siguientes. Utilice el verbo modal correcto en la conversación. Represente la conversación frente a la clase.

1. Your friend needs a ride to a meeting tomorrow. You have a car. Tell your friend that you **could** give him or her a ride.
2. Your friend needs to talk to the doctor. He or she called yesterday, but the office was closed. Tell your friend that he or she **should** call again.
3. You saw a movie last night and you liked it. Your friend wants to know if it was a good movie. Tell your friend that he or she **would** like it.
4. Your friend went to a meeting yesterday at work, but he or she was confused about the information. Tell your friend that he or she **could** talk to the boss or friend at work.
5. You are at a restaurant. You asked for a drink and you finished it. Your server asks if you would like another drink. Tell the server that you **would** like a different one.



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog



- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Would you do me a favor?</p> <p>Sure. What did you need?</p> | <p>2. I need a ride tomorrow morning to school. Does that work for you?</p> <p>Of course! What time should we leave?</p> |
| <p>3. Could we leave around 8:30?</p> <p>No problem. I will be at your house by 8:30 at the latest.</p> | <p>4. Do you need some help?</p> <p>Yes, could you please help me carry this big bag?</p> |



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | | |
|----|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. | Expression | Do me a favor. |
| | Meaning | I need your help. |
| | Example | Would you do me a favor. |
| | Meaning | She needs your help. |
| 2. | Expression | no problem |
| | Meaning | yes, sure, I can do that. |
| | Example | <p>Could you help me?</p> <p>No problem! What do you need?</p> |
| | Meaning | Yes, I can help you. |
| 3. | Expression | Work for you |
| | Meaning | can you, are you able to, are you available to |
| | Example | If we leave at 5, does that work for you? |
| | Meaning | Are you available to leave at 5? |



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

favor

favor

community

comunidad

repair

reparar

technician

técnico

important

importante



Language Focus: 60 Common Verbs

Use the 60 common verbs from Module 3 to role-play and practice verbs and conjugations. Show the action of the verb and gesture through the conjugations for the conditional tense and then for the future tense.

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Card 14A

Module 14	Dialog	Diálogo
Tom:	Hi, this is Tom. Would you do me a favor?	<i>Hola, soy Tom. ¿Podrías hacerme un favor?</i>
Richard:	Sure. How can I help you?	<i>Claro. ¿Cómo puedo ayudarte?</i>
Tom:	My car is in the repair shop and I would like to go to the meeting on Thursday night.	<i>Tengo el auto en el taller y me gustaría ir a la reunión el jueves por la noche.</i>
Richard:	No problem. The meeting starts at 7:00. What time do you think we should leave your house in order to be on time?	<i>No hay problema. La reunión empieza a las 7:00. ¿A qué hora crees que deberíamos salir de tu casa para llegar a tiempo?</i>
Tom:	I think 6:40 would be okay. Does that work for you?	<i>Creo que a las 18:40 h sería una buena hora. ¿Te va bien?</i>
Richard:	Sure. See you then.	<i>Claro. Hasta entonces.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Card 14B

	All persons: I/You/He/She/It/We/They	All persons: I/You/He/She/It/We/They
<u>Verb</u>	<u>Conditional</u>	<u>Future</u>
to answer	would/could/should/might answer	will answer
to begin	would/could/should/might begin	will begin
to make	would/could/should/might make	will make
to read	would/could/should/might read	will read
to speak	would/could/should/might speak	will speak
to take	would/could/should/might take	will take
to talk	would/could/should/might talk	will talk
to do	would/could/should/might do	will do
to teach	would/could/should/might teach	will teach
to try	would/could/should/might try	will try

Module 15

MAKING A NEW FRIEND

Making a New Friend

15

(3 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives

Objetivos



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:	
Now I can . . .	Now I know . . .
<div><input type="radio"/> 1. express likes and dislikes.</div> <div><input type="radio"/> 2. talk about activities I used to do.</div>	

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Linda:	Jody, tell me about yourself. Where were you born and where have you lived?	<i>Jody, háblame de ti. ¿Dónde naciste y dónde has vivido?</i>
Jody:	I was born in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, but then we moved to Tennessee, where I lived until I was 15. Then we moved to Dallas, Texas, where I lived until I went off to college in New York.	<i>Nací en Filadelfia, Pensilvania, pero nos mudamos a Tennessee, donde viví hasta cumplir los 15. De ahí nos fuimos a Dallas, Texas, y viví allá hasta que fui a la universidad en Nueva York.</i>
Linda:	What kind of sports do you like?	<i>¿Qué clase de deportes te gustan?</i>
Jody:	I used to play tennis until I had a knee injury that put a stop to that. How about you?	<i>Solía jugar tenis hasta que me lesioné la rodilla y tuve que dejarlo. ¿Y a ti?</i>
Linda:	I used to play golf, but now I don't have time. When I can I like to watch it. Do you like to hike?	<i>Yo jugaba al golf, pero ahora no tengo tiempo. Me gusta verlo cuando puedo. ¿Te gusta ir de caminata?</i>
Jody:	Yes, and there is a great nature walk in the county park nearby. Would you like to go sometime?	<i>Sí, hay una ruta muy buena en el parque provincial cercano. ¿Te gustaría ir alguna vez?</i>
Linda:	Sure, how about a Saturday? Maybe this Saturday morning?	<i>Claro. ¿Qué tal un sábado? ¿Tal vez el sábado por la mañana?</i>
Jody:	Great. I'll plan to pick you up at 9:00 a.m, if you like.	<i>Magnífico. Puedo recogerte a las 9:00 h, si te parece bien.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

-a- plan, bad, band

sp- sports, spin, spend

-ck pick, pack, dock

-teen fiteen, sixteen, canteen

kn- knee, knife, know

-ime time, lime, chime

-ide side, hide, guide

-ive drive, five, alive

-tch patch, catch, match

-ure sure, pure, cure

-ure injure, mature, nature

-v have, moved, leave

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

pl ____ n b ____ d b ____ nd

____ orts ____ in ____ end

pi ____ pa ____ do ____

fif ____ six ____ can ____

____ ee ____ ife ____ ow

t ____ l ____ ch ____

s ____ h ____ gu ____

dr ____ f ____ al ____

pa ____ ca ____ ma ____

s ____ p ____ c ____

in ____ ma ____ na ____

ha ____ e mo ____ ed lea ____ e



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

Word Rhyming Words

pick chick kick lick nick quick sick slick tick thick

born corn forlorn horn torn worn

park bark Clark dark lark mark shark

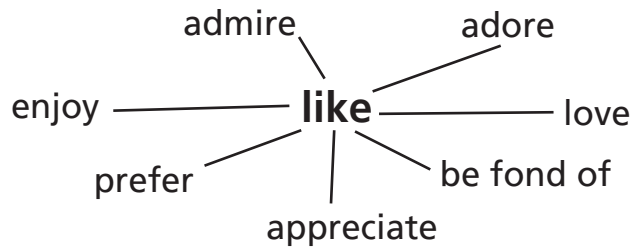
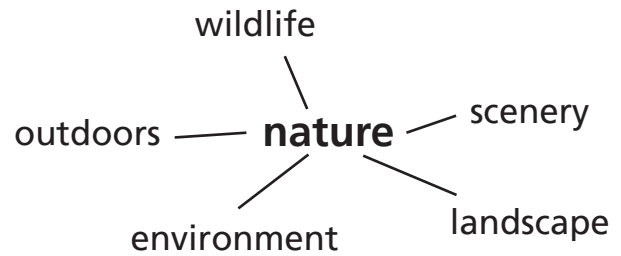
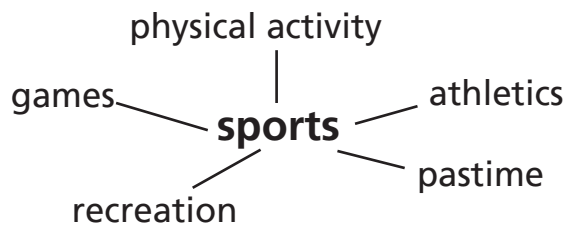
hike bike like Mike pike

sport abort fort port short sort



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Listen, repeat, and write.

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

sports
sometime
pick you up
sure
play
watch
injury
nature
until
like
went off

Writing Practice

Related Words

Writing Practice

athletics
anytime
give you a ride
yes
do
view
hurt
outside
before
enjoy
left for



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacerlas coincidir con palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| sports • | • give you a ride |
| sometime • | • athletics |
| pick you up • | • hurt |
| sure • | • do |
| play • | • before |
| watch • | • anytime |
| injury • | • enjoy |
| nature • | • view |
| until • | • yes |
| like • | • left for |
| went off • | • outside |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

sports

athletics



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

- Linda: Jody, tell me _____ yourself. Where were you born and _____ have you lived?
- Jody: I was born in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, but then we _____ to Tennessee, where I lived until I was 15.
- Linda: What kind of _____ do you like?
- Jody: I _____ play tennis until I had a knee injury. How about you?
- Linda: I used to _____ golf, but now I don't have time. When I can I like to _____ it. Do you like to hike?
- Jody: Yes, and there is a great _____ walk in the county park nearby. _____ like to go sometime?
- Linda: _____, how about a Saturday? Maybe _____ Saturday morning?
- Jody: Great. I'll plan to _____ you up at 9:00 a.m, if you like.

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.

Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

1. Where are you from? I'm from
2. We should go hiking sometime.
3. How about Saturday morning?
4. What kind of sports do you like?



From the dialog, circle the correct word.

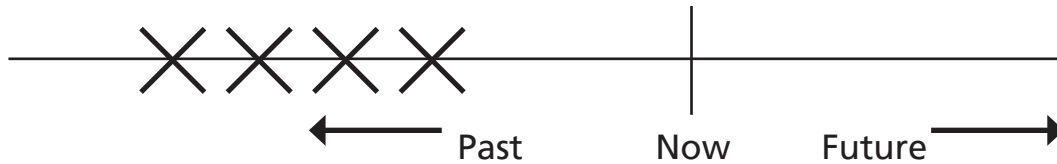
Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta.

- Linda: Jody, tell me about (you / yourself). Where were you born and where have you (lived / left)?
- Jody: I was (barn / born) in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, but (then / than) we moved to Tennessee, where I lived until I was 15. Then we moved to Dallas, Texas, where I lived until I went off to college in New York.
- Linda: What kind of sports (do / does) you like?
- Jody: I (used / used to) play tennis until I had a (key / knee) injury that put a stop to that. How about you?
- Linda: I used to play golf, but (now / know) I don't have time. When I can I like to watch it. Do you like to (hick / hike)?
- Jody: Yes, and (there / these) is a great nature walk in the county park nearby. Would you (lick / like) to go sometime?
- Linda: Sure, (how / who) about a Saturday? (Many / Maybe) (the / this) Saturday morning?
- Jody: Great. I'll plan to (pick / pike) you up at 9:00 a.m, if you like.



Past Repeated Actions

The imperfect verb tense is used for actions that were done repeatedly in the past but are done no longer.



Example:

I **used to ride** my bicycle every day when I was a child. (I am not a child now.)

I **used to exercise** at the gym every Tuesday.

I **used to visit** my friends in Georgia every summer.

Past Facts

The imperfect verb tense is also used for facts and generalizations that were true in the past but are not true in the present.



Example:

I **used to** live in California, but now I live in Utah.

Alicia **used to** be a learner, but now she has a full-time job.

My sister **used to** live in Miami, but last year she moved to Boston.



Language Focus: **used to**



I used to	I used to go to school at the junior college. I _____ (eat) too much.
YOU used to	You used to have blonde hair. You _____ (have) fun playing soccer.
WE used to	We used to see each other often. We _____ (help) each other.
THEY used to	They used to come to watch movies. They _____ (study) together.
HE/SHE/IT used to	He used to help the other learners. She _____ (learn) with fold cards.



Language Focus: **used to**

1. We used to go to the movies (every Tuesday / one time) .
2. I _____ visit my grandmother (every summer / last night).
3. He _____ in Arizona (next year / as a child).
4. Maria _____ want to be a nurse (when she was younger / on Sunday).
5. David _____ exercise (yesterday / every day).
6. Olivia and Jordan _____ date (a long time ago / last week).

Instructors project the exercise. Have the learners fill in the blanks in their notebooks and then repeat the sentences after the instructor.



Create and share some of your own sentences with the imperfect tense using the words **used to** and the infinitive of some of the 60 common verbs.



Language Focus: **used to**

Write sentences using the form **used to** and the words below.

*Escriba frases valiéndose de la fórmula **solía** y las palabras siguientes.*

1. Kaylee / work at the museum. Kaylee used to work at the museum.
2. Tamara / work / every weekend.
3. We / live near the ocean.
4. They / study math / every day.
5. Ryan and Holly / watch TV / every day.
6. Jeffrey / go to college.
7. David / visit his cousins / once a month.
8. My brother / want to be a pilot / when he was younger.



Review Simple Present and Imperfect Tenses

The simple present tells us facts or generalizations about the present time.

Examples: Today is Thursday.

We live in Utah.

They live in California.

He lives in New York.

I work at a store.

You work at the bank.

She works full-time.

Everyone studies English.

My brother studies mathematics.

You study art.

The imperfect tense tells us that the action was repeated in the past.

Part 1: Imperfect

Part 2: Simple Present

My sister used to live in Florida,

but now she lives in Louisiana.



Language Focus: 60 Common Verbs

Use action verbs from the 60 common verbs in Module 3 to role-play and practice verbs and their conjugations. The instructor demonstrates and then learners also role-play. Show the action of the verb and gesture through the conjugations to describe what you, he, she or we used to do.



Review Simple Present and Imperfect Tenses

1. My mother / live / Dallas // she / Denver
My mother used to live in Dallas, but now she lives in Denver.
2. The Vasquez family / own a restaurant // they / run a bakery
, but now
3. Alicia / study English // she / French
, but now
4. gas / cost one dollar per gallon // it / more than \$3 per gallon
, but now
5. I / work part-time // I / work full-time
, but now



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. I visited Colorado last summer.
That's neat! I used to live there. | 4. There are some great hiking trails nearby.
We should go together sometime. |
| 2. Where are you from?

I have lived all over the place—Pennsylvania, Tennessee, Texas, and New York. | 5. Before moving here, what did you used to do?

I used to work for a bank, and I used to go to the beach. |
| 3. We should go sometime. Are you free on Saturday?
I have some time in the morning, say 9 o'clock? | |



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | | |
|-----------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. | Expression | pick (someone) up |
| | Meaning | stop by and give you a ride |
| | Example | I'll pick you up around 11:30. |
| | Meaning | I'll stop by around 11:30 and give you a ride. |
| 2. | Expression | say (time) |
| | Meaning | Does this (time) work for you? |
| | Example | Can I stop by on Saturday? Say 1 o'clock? |
| | Meaning | Can I stop by on Saturday? Does 1 o'clock work for you? |
| 3. | Expression | be a good sport |
| | Meaning | be someone who does not get angry if they lose a game or competition |
| | Example | He was a good sport after the game, even though he lost. |
| | Meaning | He was not angry after the game, even though he lost. |
| 4. | Expression | went off (to a place) |
| | Meaning | left to go (to a place) |
| | Example | He went off to the army when he was 18. |
| | Meaning | He left to go to the army when he was 18. |



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

athletic	<i>atlético</i>	golf	<i>golf</i>
park	<i>parque</i>	tennis	<i>tenis</i>
nature	<i>naturaleza</i>	activity	<i>actividad</i>
mountain	<i>montaña</i>		

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Card 15A

Module 15	Dialog	Diálogo
Linda:	Jody, tell me about yourself. Where were you born and where have you lived?	<i>Jody, háblame de ti. ¿Dónde naciste y dónde has vivido?</i>
Jody:	I was born in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, but then we moved to Tennessee, where I lived until I was 15. Then we moved to Dallas, Texas, where I lived until I went off to college in New York.	<i>Nací en Filadelfia, Pensilvania, pero nos mudamos a Tennessee, donde viví hasta cumplir los 15. De ahí nos fuimos a Dallas, Texas, y viví allá hasta que fui a la universidad en Nueva York.</i>
Linda:	What kind of sports do you like?	<i>¿Qué clase de deportes te gustan?</i>
Jody:	I used to play tennis until I had a knee injury that put a stop to that. How about you?	<i>Solía jugar tenis hasta que me lesioné la rodilla y tuve que dejarlo. ¿Y a ti?</i>
Linda:	I used to play golf, but now I don't have time. When I can I like to watch it. Do you like to hike?	<i>Yo jugaba al golf, pero ahora no tengo tiempo. Me gusta verlo cuando puedo. ¿Te gusta ir de caminata?</i>
Jody:	Yes, and there is a great nature walk in the county park nearby. Would you like to go sometime?	<i>Sí, hay una ruta muy buena en el parque provincial cercano. ¿Te gustaría ir alguna vez?</i>
Linda:	Sure, how about a Saturday? Maybe this Saturday morning?	<i>Claro. ¿Qué tal un sábado? ¿Tal vez el sábado por la mañana?</i>
Jody:	Great. I'll plan to pick you up at 9:00 a.m, if you like.	<i>Magnífico. Puedo recogerte a las 9:00 h, si te parece bien.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Card 15B

I / You / He / She / It / We / They used	to study .
	to live .
	to run .
	to go .
	to sing .
	to work .

Card 15C

sports	athletics
sometime	anytime
pick you up	give you a ride
sure	yes
play	do
watch	view
injury	hurt
nature	outside
until	before
like	enjoy
went off	left for

Module 16

DISCUSSING THE DAY

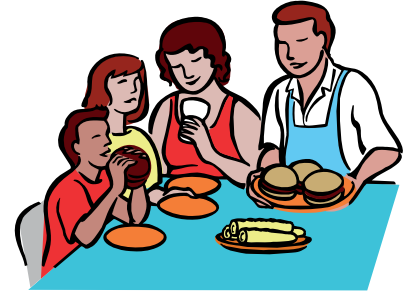
Discussing the Day

16

(4 classes with subsequent review)



Objectives
Objetivos



At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

Now I know . . .

- ☐ 1. conjugate common English verbs in past tense.
- ☐ 2. state common actions using the past tense.

The instructor and assistant instructors, and English speakers at home, help the learners with this English dialog. First, they read the whole dialog. Then they read two or three words and leave time for the learners to repeat the words until the learners can pronounce them well.

El instructor, los instructores auxiliares y los anglohablantes en casa ayudan a los alumnos con este diálogo en inglés. Primero, leen todo el diálogo. Luego leen dos o tres palabras y dan tiempo a los alumnos para que las repitan hasta que puedan pronunciarlas bien.



Memorize the dialog in English.

Memorice el diálogo en inglés.



	Dialog	Diálogo
Mother:	Hi, how was your day? What did you do?	<i>Hola, ¿cómo te fue hoy? ¿Qué hiciste?</i>
Father:	I prepared a presentation for work and spoke for about 30 minutes at a meeting.	<i>Preparé una presentación para el trabajo y hablé durante casi 30 minutos en una reunión.</i>
Mother:	How did it go?	<i>¿Qué tal te salió?</i>
Father:	My boss said it went very well.	<i>El jefe dijo que muy bien.</i>
Mother:	Great.	<i>Magnífico.</i>
Father:	How was your day?	<i>¿Cómo te fue hoy a ti?</i>
Mother:	I took the kids to school, and then I had to go shopping. I bought groceries for the whole week. I also read and practiced our English fold cards. They really helped me.	<i>Llevé a los niños a la escuela y luego tuve que ir a hacer las compras. Compré comida para toda la semana. También leí y practiqué las tarjetas plegables de inglés; me fueron muy útiles.</i>
Father:	I will need to do that, too. Kids, what did you do?	<i>Yo también tendré que hacerlo. Niños, ¿qué hicieron ustedes?</i>
Son:	I played soccer with my friends in the street. Then I studied my lessons.	<i>Yo jugué fútbol con mis amigos en la calle y luego estudié.</i>
Mother:	Good. Maybe we could watch a special movie tonight, since you already did your homework.	<i>Bien. Ya que hicieron los deberes, a lo mejor podríamos ver una película especial esta noche.</i>



Pronunciation Practice

Práctica de pronunciación



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

sp- spoke, speed, special

k- kids, kind, keep

gr- grow, green, great

r- really, read, reply

-o- soccer, shopping, rock

-ee- bee, deep, feed

-ll will, skill, bill

Fill in the missing letters and say the sounds.

Complete las letras que faltan y haga los sonidos.

___ oke ___ eed ___ ecial

___ ids ___ ind ___ eep

___ ow ___ een ___ eat

___ eally ___ ead ___ eply

s ___ ccer sh ___ pping r ___ ck

b ___ d ___ p f ___ d

wi ___ ski ___ b ___



Vocabulary Practice

Práctica de vocabulario

Listen, repeat, and write.

Escuche, repita y escriba.

Dialog Words

boss

practice

kids

great

in the street

30 minutes

together

maybe

too

whole

Writing Practice

Related Words

supervisor

study

children

very good

outside

half hour

with each other

possibly

also

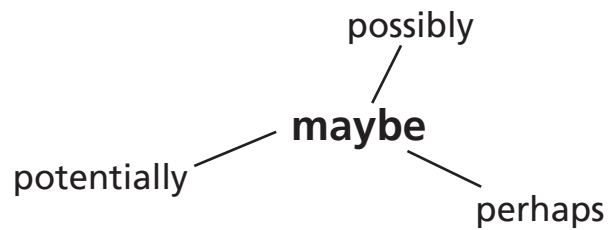
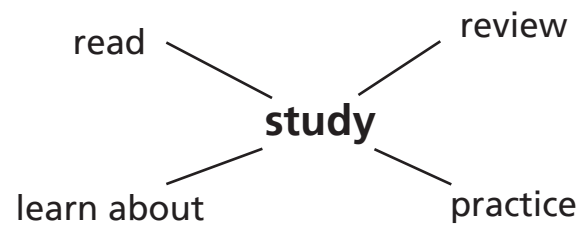
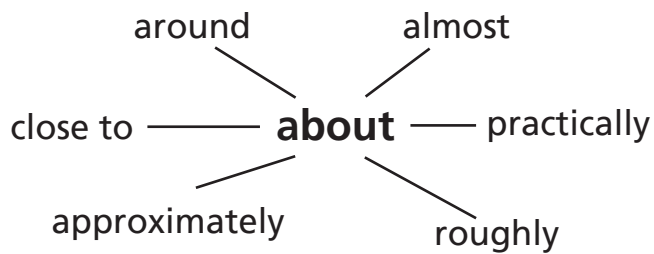
entire

Writing Practice



Word Webs (using words from the dialog and related words)

Redes de palabras (usando palabras del diálogo y palabras relacionadas)



Assistant instructors help learners write and say sentences using a few of these words. When a learner can say the words correctly, he or she can teach them to the other learners in the group.



Rhyming Words (usually starting from a word in the dialog)

Palabras que riman (por lo general empiezan con una palabra del diálogo)



Listen and repeat slowly.

Escuche y repita despacio.

<u>Word</u>	<u>Rhyming Words</u>							
boss	loss	moss	toss	floss	cross			
whole	pole	role	sole	mole	dole	stole		
took	look	book	cook	hook				
school	stool	tool	fool	cool	spool	pool		
fold	old	cold	scold	gold	bold	told	hold	sold
spoke	smoke	broke	joke	poke	stroke			



Vocabulary Practice (using words from the dialog to match to related words)

Práctica de vocabulario (usando palabras del diálogo para hacerlas coincidir con palabras relacionadas)

Match the words in pencil.

Haga coincidir las palabras con lápiz.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| boss • | • children |
| practice • | • supervisor |
| kids • | • possibly |
| great • | • outside |
| in the street • | • study |
| 30 minutes • | • entire |
| together • | • half hour |
| maybe • | • very good |
| too • | • also |
| whole • | • with each other |

Write the words you matched in pencil.

Escriba con lápiz las palabras que hizo coincidir.

boss

supervisor



Fill in the missing words in pencil from the dialog.

Complete con lápiz las palabras que falten del diálogo.

Mother: Hi, _____ your day? What did you do?

Father: I prepared a _____ for work and I _____ for about 30 minutes at a meeting.

Mother: How _____ it go?

Father: My _____ said it _____ very well.

Mother: Great!

Father: How was your day?

Mother: I _____ the kids to school, and then I had to go shopping. I bought groceries for the _____ week. I also read and practiced our English fold cards. They really _____ me.

Father: I will _____ to do that, too. _____, what did you do?

Son: I played soccer in the street with my _____. Then I studied my lessons.

Mother: Good. _____ we could watch a special movie _____, since you already _____ your homework.



Respond to the statements or questions in pencil from the dialog.

Responda a las afirmaciones o preguntas del diálogo con lápiz.

1. How was your day?
2. It went well.
3. What did you do?
4. I studied my lessons.



From the dialog, circle the correct word.

Del diálogo, trace un círculo alrededor de la palabra correcta.

- Mother: Hi, (how / who) was your day? What did you do?
- Father: I prepared a presentation for work and I (speak / spoke) for about 30 minutes at a meeting.
- Mother: How (do / did) it go?
- Father: My boss said it (want / went) very well.
- Mother: Great!
- Father: How was your day?
- Mother: I (took / talk) the kids to school and then I had to go shopping. I bought groceries for the (hole / whole) week. I also read and practiced our English fold cards. They really helped me.
- Father: I will (need / deed) to do that, too. Kids, what did you do?
- Son: I (play / played) soccer in the street with my friends. Then I studied my lessons.
- Mother: Good. (May / Maybe) we could watch a special movie together tonight, since you already (do / did) your homework.



Language Focus: 60 Common Verbs— Verbs in the Past (Preterite) Tense



Fill in the blank practice sentences after **I, You, We, They, He, She, or It**. Note that the past tense verb is the same for all persons. Use a pencil.

Llene el espacio en blanco de las frases de práctica después I, You, We, They, He, She o It. Fíjese en que el tiempo verbal en pasado es igual para todas las personas. Use un lápiz.

-d

1.	to arrive:	It arrived late.	He	with me.
2.	to believe:	They believed you.	She	it.
3.	to hear:	She heard a noise.	You	the song.
4.	to invite:	You invited him.	We	them.
5.	to like:	I liked the dinner.	He	the class.
6.	to love:	We loved the music.	They	learning English.

-ed


7.	to answer:	He answered right away.	She	correctly.
8.	to ask:	I asked a question.	We	him again.
9.	to call:	They called every night.	We	him on the phone.
10.	to cash:	You cashed the check.	He	the check.
11.	to finish:	It finished early.	You	on time.
12.	to help:	She helped his friend.	We	everyone.
13.	to laugh:	They laughed at the joke.	I	all night.
14.	to learn:	I learned a lot.	We	the verbs.
15.	to listen:	He listened carefully.	They	to the instructions.
16.	to look:	You looked right at him.	He	sad.
17.	to need:	I needed to eat.	She	to go to school.
18.	to remember:	I remembered her well.	They	the story.
19.	to repeat:	We repeated the dialog.	She	the vocabulary.
20.	to spell:	She spelled the word right.	He	the word wrong.
21.	to stay:	We stayed the night.	They	too long.
22.	to talk:	You talked for an hour.	He	during class.
23.	to visit:	I visited grandmother.	She	her friends.
24.	to walk:	They walked for exercise.	We	all day.
25.	to want:	It wanted to rest.	They	to learn English.
26.	to watch:	He watched TV.	We	the demonstration.
27.	to work:	You worked too hard.	We	on Saturday.

Use action verbs from the list to role-play and practice verbs and their conjugations. The instructor demonstrates and then learners also role-play. Show the action of the verb and gesture through the conjugations to describe what you, he, she or we did.

-ied

28. to cry:	He cried a lot.	She	that night.
29. to study:	They studied for a test.	We	all weekend.
30. to try:	We tried hard.	He	to learn Spanish.

irregular

31. to begin:	 It began late.	He	class this week.
32. to bring:	He brought our books.	She	a friend.
33. to come:	It came tonight.	We	home.
34. to do:	I did my assignment	They	well.
35. to drink:	They drank the water.	We	the soda.
36. to eat:	We ate well.	He	everything.
37. to feel:	They felt bad.	She	something soft.
38. to find:	I found the wallet.	He	the address.
39. to fly:	They flew out yesterday.	We	to New York.
40. to get:	He got ill.	She	better.
41. to give:	She gave him a dollar.	I	it away.
42. to go:	You went home.	They	away.
43. to have:	We had too much work.	She	too much money.
44. to know:	They knew the way.	We	the problem.
45. to leave:	I left early.	They	at noon.
46. to make:	He made it home.	She	a cake.
47. to meet:	She met the instructor.	They	each other.
48. to read:	We read all night.	He	the book.
49. to say:	They said it in English.	We	they could go.
50. to see:	I saw her go.	She	the accident.
51. to sing:	She sang the song.	They	well.
52. to speak:	We spoke Spanish.	He	at Church.
53. to take:	You took a long time.	She	her book along.
54. to teach:	I taught English classes.	They	well.
55. to tell:	He told her about his work.	I	told him a story.
56. to think:	She thought a lot about it.	He	about his mother.
57. to write:	He wrote a letter.	She	well.
58. to understand:	I understood the class.	We	her English.
59. to be:	I / He / She / It was ill. You / We / They were good.	He	good in English.
60. to be able to:	I / He / She / It was able to eat. You / We / They were able to read.	She	able to speak well.
(alternate) can	I/You/We/They/He/She/It could run fast	They	work hard.



Guidelines for This Verb List:

- Verbs adding **d**: drop the **to** and add **d** for all persons
 Verbs adding **ed**: drop the **to** and add **ed** for all persons
 Verbs adding **ied**: drop the **to** and change the **y** to **i** and add **ed** for all persons
 Irregular Verbs: drop the **to** and memorize the irregular verb forms (same for all persons)

Infinitive	Verb + d	Infinitive	Verb + ed	Infinitive	Verb + ied	Infinitive	Irregular
to arrive	arrived	to ask	asked	to cry	cried	to begin	began
to believe	believed	to answer	answered	to study	studied	to bring	brought
to hear	heard*	to call	called	to try	tried	to come	came
to invite	invited	to cash	cashed			to do	did
to like	liked	to finish	finished			to drink	drank
to love	loved	to help	helped			to eat	ate
		to laugh	laughed			to feel	felt
		to learn	learned			to find	found
		to listen	listened			to fly	flew
		to look	looked			to get	got
		to need	needed			to give	gave
		to remember	remembered			to go	went
		to repeat	repeated			to have	had
		to spell	spelled			to know	knew
		to stay	stayed			to leave	left
		to talk	talked			to make	made
		to visit	visited			to meet	met
		to walk	walked			to read	read**
		to want	wanted			to say	said
		to watch	watched			to see	saw
		to work	worked			to sing	sang
						to speak	spoke
						to take	took
						to teach	taught
						to tell	told
						to think	thought
						to write	wrote
						to understand	understood

* Pronunciation of **heard**: /herd/

** Pronunciation of **read**: /red/

More Irregular Verbs

to be	I / He / She / It was	You / We / They were
to be able to	I / He / She / It was able to	You / We / They were able to
(alternate) can	I / you / We / They / He / She / It could	



Mini-Conversations Related to the Dialog

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. How was your day?
It was long. (great, boring, good) | 2. What did you do?
I went to English class. |
| 3. How did class go?
It went well. I learned new vocabulary and grammar. | 4. I studied the English fold cards a lot.
That's wonderful. I should study them, too. |
| 5. I finished my homework.
Good for you! | |



Expressions Related to the Dialog

Expresiones relacionadas con el diálogo

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Expression: | How did _____ go? |
| Meaning: | How was _____ ? |
| Examples: | How did your presentation go? |
| Meaning: | How was your presentation? |
| 2. Expression: | _____ went well / okay / poorly. |
| Meaning: | _____ was good / okay / bad |
| Examples: | My presentation went okay. |
| Meaning: | My presentation was okay. |



Cognates (similar-sounding words to recognize and translate)

Cognados (palabras con sonidos parecidos para reconocer y traducir)

Listen and repeat.

Escuche y repita.

study	<i>estudiar</i>	practice	<i>practicar</i>
prepare	<i>preparar</i>	presentation	<i>presentación</i>
minutes	<i>minutos</i>	lessons	<i>lecciones</i>
special	<i>especial</i>		

Dialog Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de diálogo

Card 16A

Module 6	Dialog	<i>Diálogo</i>
Mother:	Hi, how was your day? What did you do?	<i>Hola, ¿cómo te fue hoy? ¿Qué hiciste?</i>
Father:	I prepared a presentation for work and spoke for about 30 minutes at a meeting.	<i>Preparé una presentación para el trabajo y hablé durante casi 30 minutos en una reunión.</i>
Mother:	How did it go?	<i>¿Qué tal te salió?</i>
Father:	My boss said it went very well.	<i>El jefe dijo que muy bien.</i>
Mother:	Great.	<i>Magnífico.</i>
Father:	How was your day?	<i>¿Cómo te fue hoy a ti?</i>
Mother:	I took the kids to school, and then I had to go shopping. I bought groceries for the whole week. I also read and practiced our English fold cards. They really helped me.	<i>Llevé a los niños a la escuela y luego tuve que ir a hacer las compras. Compré comida para toda la semana. También leí y practiqué las tarjetas plegables de inglés; me fueron muy útiles.</i>
Father:	I will need to do that, too. Kids, what did you do?	<i>Yo también tendré que hacerlo. Niños, ¿qué hicieron ustedes?</i>
Son:	I played soccer with my friends in the street. Then I studied my lessons.	<i>Yo jugué fútbol con mis amigos en la calle y luego estudié.</i>
Mother:	Good. Maybe we could watch a special movie tonight, since you already did your homework.	<i>Bien. Ya que hicieron los deberes, a lo mejor podríamos ver una película especial esta noche.</i>

Vocabulary Flash Fold Card

Tarjeta plegable de vocabulario

Card 16B

Verb	Translation	Past for ALL persons	Sample sentence
Add -d			
1. to arrive	<i>llegar</i>	arrived	I arrived.
2. to believe	<i>creer</i>	believed	We believed.
3. to hear	<i>oír</i>	heard	You heard.
4. to invite	<i>invitar</i>	invited	They invited.
5. to like	<i>gustar</i>	liked	He liked.
6. to love	<i>amar</i>	loved	She loved.
Add -ed			
7. to ask	<i>preguntar</i>	asked	It asked.
8. to answer	<i>contestar</i>	answered	I answered.
9. to call	<i>llamar</i>	called	You called.
10. to cash	<i>cobrar</i>	cashed	We cashed.
11. to finish	<i>finalizar</i>	finished	They finished.
12. to help	<i>ayudar</i>	helped	He helped.
13. to laugh	<i>reír</i>	laughed	She laughed.
14. to learn	<i>aprender</i>	learned	It learned.
15. to listen	<i>escuchar</i>	listened	I listened.
16. to look	<i>mirar</i>	looked	You looked.
17. to need	<i>necesitar</i>	needed	I needed some.
18. to remember	<i>recordar</i>	remembered	She remembered.
19. to repeat	<i>repetir</i>	repeated	We repeated.
20. to spell	<i>deletrear</i>	spelled	They spelled.
21. to stay	<i>quedarse</i>	stayed	He stayed.
22. to talk	<i>hablar</i>	talked	She talked.
23. to visit	<i>visitar</i>	visited	We visited.
24. to walk	<i>caminar</i>	walked	I walked.
25. to want	<i>querer</i>	wanted	You wanted
26. to watch	<i>mirar</i>	watched	It watched.
27. to work	<i>trabajar</i>	worked	They worked.
Change -y to i and add -ed			
28. to cry	<i>llorar</i>	cried	He cried.
29. to study	<i>estudiar</i>	studied	She studied.
30. to try	<i>intentar</i>	tried	I tried.



Verb	Translation	Past for ALL persons	Sample sentence
Irregular (does not follow a pattern)			
31. to be (I, he, she, it)	<i>ser o estar (yo, él, ella)</i>	was	I was happy. He was happy. She was happy. It was cold.
to be (you, they, we)	<i>ser o estar (tú/ustedes/ vosotros, ellos, nosotros)</i>	were	You were happy. They were happy. We were happy.
32. to be able to (I, he, she, it)	<i>ser capaz de (yo, él, ella)</i>	was able to	I was able to do it. He was able to do it. She was able to. It was able to.
to be able to (you, they, we)	<i>ser capaz de (tú/ustedes/ vosotros, ellos, nosotros)</i>	were able to	You were able to. They were able to. We were able to.
alternate: can	<i>alternativa: poder</i>	could	I could.
33. to begin	<i>empezar</i>	began	It began.
34. to bring	<i>traer</i>	brought	You brought it.
35. to come	<i>venir</i>	came	We came.
36. to do	<i>hacer</i>	did	They did it.
37. to drink	<i>beber</i>	drank	She drank.
38. to eat	<i>comer</i>	ate	He ate.
39. to feel	<i>sentir</i>	felt	I felt it.
40. to find	<i>encontrar</i>	found	You found it.



Verb	Translation	Past for ALL persons	Sample sentence
41. to fly	<i>volar</i>	flew	We flew.
42. to get	<i>conseguir</i>	got	It got cold.
43. to give	<i>dar</i>	gave	They gave it to me.
44. to go	<i>ir</i>	went	She went home.
45. to have	<i>tener</i>	had	He had it.
46. to know	<i>saber</i>	knew	I knew it.
47. to leave	<i>irse</i>	left	You left.
48. to make	<i>hacer</i>	made	We made it.
49. to meet	<i>reunirse</i>	met	They met.
50. to read	<i>leer</i>	read	She read.
51. to say	<i>decir</i>	said	He said it.
52. to see	<i>ver</i>	saw	I saw it.
53. to sing	<i>cantar</i>	sang	You sang.
54. to speak	<i>hablar</i>	spoke	We spoke.
55. to take	<i>llevar</i>	took	They took it.
56. to teach	<i>enseñar</i>	taught	She taught.
57. to tell	<i>contar</i>	told	He told me.
58. to think	<i>pensar</i>	thought	I thought.
59. to understand	<i>entender</i>	understood	You understood.
60. to write	<i>escribir</i>	wrote	We wrote.

Module 17

PREPARATION FOR THE OPIC CERTIFICATION EXAM

Preparation for the OPIc Cer- 17 tification Exam

from the American Council on the Teaching of Foreign Languages (ACTFL)

(10 or more classes, as needed, with 1 assistant instructor for every 2 learners)



Objectives

Objetivos

At the end of this module, I will be able to affirm:

Now I can . . .

- ☐ 1. use the quick reference list to practice asking and answering simple questions.
- ☐ 2. answer questions about family, home, likes, dislikes, and daily actions and events in the present tense.
- ☐ 3. answer questions about family, home, likes, dislikes, and daily actions and events in the past tense.
- ☐ 4. answer questions about family, home, likes, dislikes, and daily actions and events in the future and conditional tenses.

Now I know . . .



Notes to the instructor (to be shared and explained to the learners in detail)

The OPIc is a listening and speaking test offered by the American Council on the Teaching of Foreign Languages (ACTFL). It's the gold standard of tests. To help learners prepare to score well, instructors need to review the information on this page with them approximately one month prior to their taking the OPIc exam. With an intermediate or better score, learners will be able to show their certificate to help them get a better job in many fields.

OPIc Preparation

The Oral Proficiency Interview by computer (OPIc) begins with a survey to identify subjects about which the learner has some experience. The actual interview then focuses on these subjects. For example:

- their family
- their home
- the classes they have taken and liked
- the schools they have attended
- the cities where they have lived—make comparisons
- the hobbies or activities they enjoy
- the kind of music they like
- their friends and things they do together
- the foods they like or dislike
- a career they might like to have
- their job

Learners might be asked to describe what these things are like in their home city or country. They might also be asked to compare them with other cities where they have lived or visited. If they do not know much about a particular subject, they should be prepared to respond in an appropriate fashion such as, “I don’t know that much about (living) in (Los Angeles), but I can say that (Dallas is a friendly city).”

Learners should spend approximately one month preparing for the OPIc by describing things and activities (like those mentioned above) in detail, comparing their understanding and experiences from one city or location or friend to another, or from one time in their life to another. They must understand that they will likely be asked to describe an interesting experience on a walk with a friend, a class that they particularly enjoyed and why, their favorite activity or hobby and the favorite activity of their friends, and so forth. The ability to narrate, or recount events using the correct past tense verb conjugations, is important.

OPIc Prerequisites

The learner must qualify to take the OPIc by doing the following:

- Attend at least 80 percent of the EFY Now classes (after including make up classes if needed). Complete the study and practice of the first 16 modules in English For You Now.
- Complete all of the exercises in Modules 1–16..
- Be able to pronounce well all the words in the initial sections of Module 1.
- Be able to read fluently, with good pronunciation, all of the dialogs in Modules 1–16.
- Have mastered the usage in sentences, along with good pronunciation, of the 60 Common Verbs and the various tenses found in Module 17.
- Be able to fluently describe and compare the subjects described above, because some of them are very likely to come up on the OPIc exam. Everything else in these modules will help you prepare for this. This is the most critical part of the OPIc preparation.

The learners should prepare draft responses, which should be reviewed and edited by the teacher or assistant instructor. Then the learners should practice hearing questions on the subjects and giving appropriate responses with good pronunciation. This is critical to their success.



Instructions for introducing the verb chart

Give to each of the learners:

- This sheet with the Quick Reference List.
- The full Common Verb chart, with holes punched for immediate placement in the learners' notebooks.

Practice using the verb chart with the learners:

- Give the learners a verb in English, and then ask them to find the verb on the chart.
- Then give them one of the sample sentences below the verb on the chart. Use one of the easier tenses (such as simple present, simple past, or simple future).
- Read the sentence for the learners, and then have the learners say the sentence with you.
- Next, ask them to find the conjugation that was used in the sentence immediately above on the verb chart.
- Repeat this several times with other sample sentences for the same verb, using increasingly challenging tenses, until the learners know how to use the chart.
- Be creative—the goal is to help learners know how to use the chart.

Quick Reference List

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. to answer | 16. to feel | 31. to like | 46. to stay |
| 2. to arrive | 17. to find | 32. to listen | 47. to study |
| 3. to ask | 18. to finish | 33. to look | 48. to talk |
| 4. to be | 19. to fly | 34. to love | 49. to take |
| 5. to be able (can) | 20. to get | 35. to make | 50. to teach |
| 6. to begin | 21. to give | 36. to meet | 51. to tell |
| 7. to believe | 22. to go | 37. to need | 52. to think |
| 8. to bring | 23. to have | 38. to read | 53. to try |
| 9. to cash | 24. to hear | 39. to remember | 54. to understand |
| 10. to call | 25. to help | 40. to repeat | 55. to visit |
| 11. to come | 26. to invite | 41. to say | 56. to walk |
| 12. to cry | 27. to know | 42. to see | 57. to want |
| 13. to do | 28. to laugh | 43. to sing | 58. to watch |
| 14. to drink | 29. to learn | 44. to speak | 59. to work |
| 15. to eat | 30. to leave | 45. to spell | 60. to write |

	Infinitive	Present	Present Progressive
1.	TO ANSWER		
	I/You/We/They	answer	am/are answering
	He/She/It	answers	is answering
	<i>contestar</i>	I answer.	She is answering.
2.	TO ARRIVE		
	I/You/We/They	arrive	am/are arriving
	He/She/It	arrives	is arriving
	<i>llegar</i>	You arrive.	I am arriving.
3.	TO ASK (FOR)		
	I/You/We/They	ask	am/are asking
	He/She/It	asks	is asking
	<i>preguntar, pedir</i>	We ask often.	He is asking for me.
4.	TO BE		
	I/You/We/They	am/are	am/are being
	He/She/It	is	is being
	<i>ser, estar</i>	He is happy.	We are being fast.
5.	TO BE ABLE (CAN)		
	I/You/We/They	am/are able	—
		can	
	He/She/It	is able	—
		can	
	<i>poder</i>	I am able to study.	—
		I can study.	
6.	TO BEGIN		
	I/You/We/They	begin	am/are beginning
	He/She/It	begins	is beginning
	<i>comenzar, empezar</i>	We begin today.	It is beginning to rain.
7.	TO BELIEVE		
	I/You/We/They	believe	—
	He/She/It	begins	—
	<i>creer</i>	I believe you.	—

Conditional
(would/could/should)

Future

Past (Preterite)

would answer

"

They would answer.

will answer

"

He will answer.

answered

"

You answered.

would arrive

"

He would arrive next.

will arrive

"

She will arrive tomorrow.

arrived

"

We arrived.

would ask

"

She would ask for it.

will ask

"

I will ask for help.

asked

"

We asked.

would be

"

I would be sad.

will be

"

You will be fluent.

was/were

was

We were bored.

She was late.

would be able

"

He would be able to come.

will be able

"

I will be able to go.

was/were able

could

was able

could

You were not able to be there.

He could study.

would begin

"

They would begin.

will begin

"

She will begin tomorrow.

began

was

He began yesterday.

would believe

"

He would believe it.

will believe

"

You will believe me.

believed

"

He believed in Santa Clause.

	Infinitive	Present	Present Progressive
8.	TO BRING I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>traer</i>	bring brings I bring good news.	am/are bringing is bringing They are bringing their car.
9.	TO CASH I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>cobrar</i>	cash cashes They cash checks here.	am/are cashing is cashing She is cashing the check now.
10.	TO CALL I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>llamar</i>	call calls He calls every day.	am/are calling is calling She is calling now.
11.	TO COME I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>venir</i>	(venir) (vir) come came I always come home.	am/are coming is coming We are coming today.
12.	TO CRY I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>llorar</i>	(llorar) (chorar) cry crying I cry sometimes.	am/are crying is crying They are crying.
13.	TO DO I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>hacer</i>	do does I do my homework. He does his job.	am/are doing is doing I am doing the work. They are doing well.
14.	TO DRINK I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>tomar, beber</i>	drink drinks She drinks water.	am/are drinking is drinking They are drinking water.

Conditional
(would/could/should)

Future

Past (Preterite)

would bring

"

You could bring drinks.

will bring

"

He will bring dessert.

brought

"

She brought the paper.

would cash

"

They should cash it.

will cash

"

We will cash it tomorrow.

cashed

"

You cashed it today.

would call

"

He could call now.

will call

"

We will call soon.

called

"

You called me?

would come

"

She could come sooner.

will come

"

He will come later.

came

"

It came early.

would cry

"

They would cry about it.

will cry

"

I am crying right now.

cried

"

You cried a lot.

would do

"

You would do it.

will do

"

They will do it.

did

"

He did it yesterday.

would drink

"

I would drink juice.

will drink

"

She will drink it.

drank

"

We drank juice.

	Infinitive	Present	Present Progressive
15.	TO EAT I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>comer</i>	eat eats I eat early.	am/are eating is eating I am eating now.
16.	TO FEEL I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>sentir</i>	feel feels I feel good.	am/are feeling is feeling I am feeling okay.
17.	TO FIND I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>encontrar</i>	find finds I find it easy.	am/are finding is finding He is finding it difficult.
18.	TO FINISH I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>terminar</i>	finish finishes I finish at noon.	am/are finishing is finishing She is finishing.
19.	TO FLY I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>volar</i>	(volar) (voar) fly flies You fly to Montreal.	am/are flying is flying They are flying tonight..
20.	TO GET I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>obtener</i> (“to get” se usa en muchas expresiones y tiene muchos significados diferentes en inglés.)	get gets I get lonely.	am/are getting is getting She is getting married.
21.	TO GIVE I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>dar</i>	give gives I give up.	am/are giving is giving We are giving gifts.

Conditional
(would/could/should)

Future

Past (Preterite)

would eat

"

She should eat it.

will eat

"

We will eat now.

ate

"

You ate my food!

would feel

"

It would feel good.

will feel

"

She will feel it.

felt

"

They felt sad.

would find

"

I would find it.

will find

"

They will find it soon.

found

"

We found the key.

would finish

"

It would finish last.

will finish

"

He will finish soon.

finished

"

We just finished.

would fly

"

He would fly there.

will fly

"

She will fly soon.

flew

"

We flew yesterday.

would get

"

You could get tired.

will get

"

They will get up early.

got

"

He got a job.

would give

"

The would give more.

will give

"

I will give a dollar.

gave

"

You gave money.

	Infinitive	Present	Present Progressive
22.	TO GO I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>ir</i>	go goes I go to school.	am/are going is going I am going now.
23.	TO HAVE I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>tener</i>	have has I have a dream.	am/are having is having We are having company.
24.	TO HEAR I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>oír</i>	hear hears I hear you.	am/are hearing is hearing She is hearing things.
25.	TO HELP I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>ayudar</i>	help helps I always help.	am/are helping is helping They are helping us.
26.	TO INVITE I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>invitar</i>	invite invites He invites everyone.	am/are invited is inviting She is inviting us.
27.	TO KNOW I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>saber</i>	know knows She knows you.	— — —
28.	TO LAUGH I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>reír</i>	laugh laughs You laugh a lot.	am/are laughing is laughing He is laughing now.

Conditional
(would/could/should)

Future

Past (Preterite)

would go

"

They should go later.

will go

"

We will go now.

went

"

She went home.

would have

"

They could have one.

will have

"

He will have it.

am having

"

She has had a cold.

would hear

"

We could not hear you.

will hear

"

They will hear the music.

heard

"

You heard me.

would help

"

He should help.

will help

"

She will help us.

helped

"

We helped them.

would invite

"

I would invite you.

will invite

"

They will invite everyone.

invited

"

I invited them to stay.

would know

"

He would know me.

will know

"

You will know soon.

knew

"

They knew it.

would laugh

"

She should not laugh.

will laugh

"

We will laugh with you.

laughed

"

I laughed at him.

	Infinitive	Present	Present Progressive
29.	TO LEARN		
	I/You/We/They	learn	am/are learning
	He/She/It	learns	is laughing
	<i>aprender</i>	We learn English.	We are learning together.
30.	TO LEAVE		
	I/You/We/They	leave	am/are leaving
	He/She/It	leaves	is leaving
	<i>salir</i>	You leave early.	I am leaving now.
31.	TO LIKE		
	I/You/We/They	like	—
	He/She/It	likes	—
	<i>gustar</i>	She likes you.	—
32.	TO LISTEN		
	I/You/We/They	listen	am/are listening
	He/She/It	listens	is listening
	<i>escuchar</i>	I always listen.	She is listening now.
33.	TO LOOK		
	I/You/We/They	look	am/are looking
	He/She/It	looks	is looking
	<i>mirar</i>	You look fine.	They are looking around.
34.	TO LOVE		
	I/You/We/They	love	—
	He/She/It	loves	—
	<i>amar</i>	I love you.	—
35.	TO MAKE		
	I/You/We/They	make	am/are making
	He/She/It	makes	is making
	<i>hacer</i>	I make money.	He is making a cake.

Conditional
(would/could/should)

Future

Past (Preterite)

would learn

"

He could learn Chinese.

will learn

"

I will learn how to do it.

learned

"

They learned a lesson.

would leave

"

We should leave sooner.

will leave

"

I will leave tomorrow.

left

"

I left my bag.

would like

"

He would like it.

will like

"

She will like it.

liked

"

I liked the movie.

would listen

"

We could listen.

will listen

"

I will listen.

listened

"

We listened carefully.

would look

"

I would look there.

will look

"

She will look older.

looked

"

It looked good.

would love

"

We could love it.

will love

"

She will always love chocolate.

loved

"

They loved each other.

would make

"

They would make it.

will make

"

We will make a lot of money.

made

"

You made it work.

	Infinitive	Present	Present Progressive
36.	TO MEET		
	I/You/We/They	meet	am/are meeting
	He/She/It	meets	is meeting
	<i>conocer</i>	I meet her every day.	He is meeting with them.
37.	TO NEED		
	I/You/We/They	need	—
	He/She/It	needs	—
	<i>necesitar</i>	She needs to rest	—
38.	TO READ		
	I/You/We/They	read	am/are reading
	He/She/It	reads	is reading
	<i>leer</i>	He reads the book.	You are reading now.
39.	TO REMEMBER		
	I/You/We/They	remember	—
	He/She/It	remembers	—
	<i>recordar</i>	I remember math.	—
40.	TO REPEAT		
	I/You/We/They	repeat	am/are repeating
	He/She/It	repeats	is repeating
	<i>repetir</i>	I repeat the words.	They are repeating it.
41.	TO SAY		
	I/You/We/They	say	am/are saying
	He/She/It	says	is saying
	<i>decir</i>	We say the words.	She is saying so.
42.	TO SEE		
	I/You/We/They	see	am/are seeing
	He/She/It	sees	is seeing
	<i>ver</i>	It sees everything.	They are seeing it.

Conditional
(would/could/should)

Future

Past (Preterite)

would meet

"

I would meet early.

will meet

"

They will meet sometime.

met

"

We met yesterday.

would need

"

I would need to study.

will need

"

He will need money.

needed

"

They needed time.

would read

"

I could read.

will read

"

She will read it.

read

"

We read a story.

would remember

"

He could not remember.

will remember

"

He will remember us.

remembered

"

She remembered her childhood.

would repeat

"

They would repeat it.

will repeat

"

He will repeat the course.

repeated

"

She repeated the mistake.

would say

"

They would say it.

will say

"

He will say this.

said

"

I said yes.

would see

"

She could see it.

will see

"

I will see it.

saw

"

You saw the movie.

	Infinitive	Present	Present Progressive
43.	TO SING I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>cantar</i>	sing sings I sing a song.	am/are singing is singing They are singing now.
44.	TO SPEAK I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>hablar</i>	speak speaks We speak English.	am/are speaking is speaking He is speaking Spanish.
45.	TO SPELL I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>deletrear</i>	spell spells I spell many words.	am/are spelling is spelling They are spelling it correctly.
46.	TO STAY I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>quedar(se)</i>	stay stays They stay late.	am/are staying is staying We are staying here.
47.	TO STUDY I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>estudiar</i>	study studies I study a lot.	am/are studying is studying They are studying here.
48.	TO TAKE I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>tomar</i>	take takes I take the bus.	am/are taking is taking We are taking it easy.
49.	TO TALK I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>hablar, conversar</i>	talk talks I talk every day.	am/are talking is talking She is talking now.

Conditional
(would/could/should)

Future

Past (Preterite)

would sing

"

You could sing it.

will sing

"

We will sing it.

Sang

"

He sang a tune.

would speak

"

We should speak more.

will speak

"

He will speak now.

spoke

"

She spoke quickly.

would spell

"

He could spell it right.

will spell

"

I will spell it for you.

spelled

"

We spelled it right.

would stay

"

We could stay there.

will stay

"

She will stay.

stayed

"

We stayed away.

would study

"

You could study.

will study

"

He will study.

studied

"

We studied a lot.

would take

"

We would take the bus.

will take

"

He will take some.

took

"

You took the train.

would talk

"

We could talk more.

will talk

"

She will talk later.

talked

"

You talked a lot.

	Infinitive	Present	Present Progressive
50.	TO TEACH I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>enseñar</i>	teach teaches I teach every day.	am/are teaching is teaching She is teaching now.
51.	TO TELL I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>decir</i>	tell tells I tell you this.	am/are telling is telling We are telling the truth.
52.	TO THINK I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>pensar</i>	think thinks We think so.	am/are thinking is thinking He is thinking about it.
53.	TO TRY I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>tratar, intentar</i>	try tries You try hard.	am/are trying is trying He is trying hard.
54.	TO UNDERSTAND I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>entender, comprender</i>	understand understands We understand English.	— — —
55.	TO VISIT I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>visitar</i>	visit visits We visit often.	am/are visiting is visiting I am visiting my parents.
56.	TO WALK I/You/We/They He/She/It <i>caminar</i>	walk walks I walk alone.	am/are walking is walking I am walking now.

Conditional
(would/could/should)

Future

Past (Preterite)

would teach

"

They would teach kids.

will teach

"

I will teach today.

taught

"

We taught yesterday.

would tell

"

She should tell us.

will tell

"

I will tell you now.

told

"

He told you that.

would think

"

She would think so.

will think

"

I will think more.

thought

"

You thought about it.

would try

"

I would try it.

will try

"

They will try it again.

tried

"

We tried to stop.

would understand

"

She could not understand.

will understand

"

They will understand soon.

understood

"

I understood.

would visit

"

I would visit often.

will visit

"

They will visit today.

visited

"

I visited her yesterday.

would walk

"

We should walk
carefully.

will walk

"

I will walk with you.

walked

"

We walked here.

	Infinitive	Present	Present Progressive
57.	TO WANT		
	I/You/We/They	want	—
	He/She/It	wants	—
	<i>querer</i>	I want to study.	—
58.	TO WATCH		
	I/You/We/They	watch	am/are watching
	He/She/It	watch	is watching
	<i>mirar</i>	I watch tv.	She is watching tv.
59.	TO WORK		
	I/You/We/They	work	am/are working
	He/She/It	works	is working
	<i>trabajar</i>	You work hard.	I am working.
60.	TO WRITE		
	I/You/We/They	write	am/are writing
	He/She/It	writes	is writing
	<i>escribir</i>	He writes letters.	I am writing a book.

Conditional
(would/could/should)

Future

Past (Preterite)

would want

"

I would want to.

will want

"

We will want to go.

wanted

"

He wanted a car.

would watch

"

I should watch it.

will watch

"

We will watch a movie.

watched

"

You watched tv.

would work

"

She could work here.

will work

"

I will work on it soon.

worked

"

They worked on it yesterday.

would write

"

They would write a lot.

will write

"

They will write soon.

wrote

"

You wrote a letter to me.

32 Sample Questions for ACTFL Preparation

Instructors and assistant instructors read the questions with the learners and help them learn how to determine what tense they should use to answer each question. Then, instructors help the learners practice creating answers, based on hearing only, until they are proficient. Instructors remind learners to talk, talk, talk in order to get a good certificate rating.

How is the weather where you are? Tell me about the climate where you live. (present tense)

Tell me about your life. (past, present, and future tenses)

Who is your favorite actor or actress? And tell me about him or her. (present and past tenses)

If you had an accident, who would you call in the event of an emergency? (conditional tense: "would")

What is your favorite book? Tell me about it. (present tense)

What kind of music do you like and why? (present tense)

What subjects (classes) did you like best in school? (past tense)

How would you leave a message for your boss if he or she were not there? (conditional tense: "would")

If you need to call a company to replace (change) a window and they do not answer, what message would you leave and what questions would you ask in your message? (conditional tense: "would")

If you like to travel internationally, tell me about a trip you took and what you liked about it. Tell me about the places you visited and the people in detail. (past tense)

Tell me about the first trip you took outside of the country. What was your experience. Tell me in detail. (past tense)

During a vacation, did you ever have a problem? Tell me about it in detail. (past tense)

If in the world there were no laws, what would the world be like? (conditional tense: "would")

Do you use equipment in your work? How did you learn, and how important is it to your work? (present and past tenses)

What would you do if some of the equipment at your work were broken, and to whom would you report it? And how would this affect your work? (conditional tense: "would")

Tell me something about yourself. (past, present, and future tenses)

What was the weather like today? (past tense)

What plants do you like and why? And when is the best time to plant in your area? (present tense)

What are your favorite fruits? vegetables? (present tense)

What would you most like to change on the principal street in your town? (conditional tense: "would")

If you could change something to help other people, what would you change? (conditional tense: "If I could" and "I would")

If you arrive home and something is broken, how do you react and what do you do? (present tense)

Whom do you consider responsible for the education of your children? (present tense)

Who would teach your children better, you or the school and why? (conditional tense: "would")

What would you change in the school system so it would be more accessible to everyone? (conditional tense: "would")

Where would you like to travel and why? (conditional tense: "would")

What kind of travel do you like best (by plane, by boat, by bus, or by car)? And what do you like about traveling? (present tense)

What country would you most like to visit and why? (conditional tense: "would")

What do you like most about your work? (present tense)

What do you like least (dislike) about your work? (present tense)

What would you do to make the airports more secure? (conditional tense: "would")

If you could change your city, what would you change? (conditional tense: "If I could" and "I would")

Supplemental Resource Materials

ACTIVITY IDEAS

Activity Ideas

Activities, especially games, help learners have fun, be more engaged in class, and remember practiced concepts better. This appendix has been created to give you ideas for activities to help learners achieve the above.

Additionally, the activities in this appendix might help you bring more variety to class and increase class energy, as most activities will require learners to move, do something different, and compete with other learners.

Occasionally, you may use some of these activities as a modification (or replacement) of one of the module's activities. You may also use this appendix' activities as the final class activity on the days in which learners are not working on My Foundation.

The activities in this appendix are organized alphabetically, according to the amount of preparation required from the instructor. The activities that require little to no preparation for the instructor are placed first, and the ones requiring more preparation are placed last.

When using these activities, make sure you provide a good environment for learners to enjoy themselves. As usual, pay attention to your learners' needs and interests. Be sensitive and try to get everyone involved. Feel free to adapt activities to your class needs and interests, even create your own. Have fun!



I like people who...

Activity instructions

Rearrange the classroom, having all participants sit in a circle. Have one less chair removed from the circle so that everyone except for one player is seated. The one player without a chair will go to the middle of the circle and will finish the sentence:

I like people who...

As soon as the player finishes the sentence, all those who have the item described will stand up and switch chairs. For example, if the player says: I like people who have black eyes, everybody who has black eyes has to stand up and grab a different chair.

The player left without a chair gets to be in the middle and start another round.

Instructors' preparation

No preparation is required other than understanding the game and knowing how to explain it. Make sure you use vocabulary learners should know and understand.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be studying their lessons and be familiar with vocabulary, expressions, etc. This will be their basis for this activity.

Notes

Instructors and assistant instructors may participate. They should use words that learners would recognize.

Be aware of people who may be older or have disabilities. Find a way to make them legitimately participate in this activity, if you decide to play it. Make sure you do not make them feel uncomfortable.



Activity instructions

Designate a moderator and divide learners into two teams.

Have the moderator and a learner from one of the teams come upfront. The moderator holds a stack of cards upside down, hiding the word or expression written on them.

The learner randomly selects a card from the stack held by the moderator.

The learner takes a few seconds to think about how to best represent the word (or expression) on the card he or she chose, using gestures. The learner is not allowed to speak or write.

Once the learner starts representing the word, both teams start guessing aloud what the learner is representing. The first team to guess the word (or expression) earns a point.

The moderator should keep track of time, the score, and makes sure the learner does not speak or write. If the learner speaks or writes, his or her team will be deducted one point. After a point is scored, a learner from the other team should stand up and repeat this process.

The team with the highest score wins the game.

Instructors' preparation

Little preparation is required. The instructor may prepare all of the words or expressions, or may ask learners to write them down on pieces of paper, fold them, and return them to the moderator. Vocabulary may come from only one module or from the current and previous modules covered in class.

If you are preparing the cards, make sure you bring them to class ready to be played, so that you avoid wasting class time.

If you prefer learners to write in their words, bring enough paper and pens so that each learner writes at least one word, phrase or expression.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be studying their lessons and be familiar with vocabulary, expressions, etc.

If desired, you may give learners about a minute to review vocabulary.

If learners are writing the secret word or expression, that may count towards their review time.

Notes

Feel free to adapt the game to your situation and to use low-cost or non-expensive resources. If you do not have cards to write the words on, feel free to use pieces of paper and fold them enough so that learners cannot see what is written on them. You may use your hands to hold the pieces of paper and have learners randomly draw one to start a round of the game.

When playing the game for the first time, make sure you give clear instructions. Also, model the game so that learners understand it. Feel free to play one round to model the game. This will help those unfamiliar with the game know how to play it.

Assistant instructors may help keep track of time, scores, and which team first guesses the word(s) being represented.

You may play the role of the moderator, or have an assistant instructor be the moderator. If a learner is really not comfortable playing the game (or has little to low participation), you may ask the learner to help out by becoming the moderator, keep track of time, scores, or which team first guesses the word(s) being represented.



Activity instructions

Divide the class into two teams. Have one of the learners draw a card containing a secret vocabulary word, phrase or expression (found in the module being studied). This secret word can come from any part of the module that has been covered in class.

Give the learner a few seconds to think about how to draw what they read in the card.

On your mark, have the learner draw on the board representing what is on the card. At the same time, start a timer and give one minute to let the learner's team guess (in English) what was written on the card. If the team guesses within the designated time, they earn a point. If the team is not successful, no point is given or deducted.

Repeat the activity with the other team.

The team with the highest score wins.

Instructors' preparation

Little preparation is required. Make sure you have a board in your classroom, something to write on it, and to erase what is drawn. Bring a timer.

The instructor may prepare all of the words or expressions, or may ask learners to write them down on pieces of paper, fold them, and turn them to the moderator. Vocabulary may come from only one module or from the current and previous modules covered in class.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be studying their modules and be familiar with the modules' vocabulary, expressions, etc.

If learners are writing the secret word or expression, that may count towards their review time. You may give learners an additional time (about one minute) to review vocabulary.

Notes

To make the activity more interesting, you may do the following: if a group does not guess what the secret word is once time is up, the other group will have a chance to talk among themselves and state what they think the word is. If the team is correct, it earns a point.

Assistant instructors may participate in drawing the secret word, but not in guessing the secret word.

Assistant instructors may help keep track of time and scores.

You may play the role of the moderator, or have an assistant instructor be the moderator. If a learner is really not comfortable playing the game (or has little to low participation), you may ask the learner to help out by becoming the moderator.



Activity instructions

Divide learners into pairs, then give them a situation, such as:

You are meeting a friend. Decide the day, time, and place to meet.

Have learners take 2-3 minutes to prepare the situation and be ready to role-play it for the class —using English words only.

Assign a pair to perform their role-play for the rest of the class. After the role-play, have the class clap at their peers to congratulate them for their role-play. Highlight the good things of the role-play, then, assign another pair to come up and do their role-play. Repeat the process and make sure you have time to see at least three role-plays.

Instructors' preparation

Little preparation is required. Make sure that you give clear instructions and that your scenarios challenge learners, but do not overwhelm them. Feel free to give learners tools to complete the scenarios, such as: Check Language Focus expressions on pages 34-36 to complete the role-play.

Learners' preparation

Some preparation is required. Learners should be studying their lessons and be familiar with vocabulary, expressions, etc. Learners should take 3-5 minutes to prepare their role-plays in class.

Notes

Each role-play should be fairly short, but contain enough to make it meaningful. If a role-play is dragging, feel free to let learners know they have '30' seconds to finish it. If a role-play is too short, ask learners to use more vocabulary or expressions, until you feel they have done something meaningful.

If the class is big, you may divide the class into groups of three or four people. Tell learners that they all should speak about the same amount of time during the role-play. This will help avoid one or two learners overpowering the other group members, and will give all learners equal participation.

Assistant instructors may help learners prepare their role-play, as long as every pair (or team) has equal chance of getting help. Further, assistant instructors may participate in the role-play, as long as they have a minor role in it, and let learners do most (90%) of the talking.

Learners may volunteer to come up front and do their role-play. You may select the volunteers. However, be careful to avoid choosing the same people over and over so that you give equal opportunities for others to participate and practice their English skills in front of the class.

A good addition to the role-play activity is to determine and state a specific number of vocabulary words or expressions to be used in the role-play. These words or phrases should come from the Learn English Now book, and should be from the module currently being studied, though they could also come from previously studied modules.

Assigning a specific number of words, phrases or expressions to be used in the role-play, will force learners to use the module's content. To make all learners participate, you may also distribute pieces of paper to the class and have class members write the module's words, phrases or expressions used in each role-play.

After each role-play, have the class clap to the presenters. Congratulate learners for doing the role-play. Feel free to review the words and expressions used from the modules, especially if you have asked class members to take notes.



Show and tell

Activity instructions

A learner brings an object to class and talks about it to the class. The learner can describe the object and tell how he or she uses it, and why it is important to him or her.

Instructors' preparation

No preparation required other than assigning a few learners to present.

Learners' preparation

Learners should prepare at home by looking for an object they could describe. The object could be common, or it could be something meaningful and personal to them. Learners should prepare their presentation.

Notes

Learners could bring personal objects that are meaningful to them. Encourage learners listening to the presenting to ask questions after the presentation is over. This is a fun activity in which class members can learn more about each other, expand their vocabulary, and increase their English skills.

Instructors and assistant instructors may also present, bearing in mind that they should not take too much time, and they should use words that most of their learners will know.

You may have one learner presenting in one class, or several learners presenting in the same class.

If you do this activity, make sure that throughout the Learn English Now course, you have asked every learner to present, so that all feel treated equally.

An alternative to this activity is for you to bring objects and give them to learners in class. Give learners a few minutes to prepare to talk about the object (what it is, what it is used for, etc.), and have them talk about it to the whole class. If you decide to do this, take the time to think about and bring objects learners can talk about. You may have learners divided into groups to work on describing each object, and present as a group as well.

Another alternative is to have learners bring pictures of them and their families and talk about them.

The presentation could be done in front of the whole class, or in smaller groups, depending on the size of the class, the time you have, your learners' interests and needs, and whether you would like all learners to get to know each other, or prefer to have them work in smaller groups.

If you are doing the presentations for the whole class, try not to have more than five done on the same day, so that all presentations get attention and you have a variety of activities in class.

Activity instructions

Make sure every learner has a full sheet of paper and a pen or pencil. Have learners use their papers horizontally and divide their paper into several columns. The number and name of the columns will depend on the English level the learners are at and what you have covered in class. However learners should always have two columns: Letter (first column) and Score (last column).

The following is an example of column names:

Letter	Name	Place	Verb	Adjective	Thing	Expression	Score

To start playing, have a person (learner or assistant instructor) start saying the English alphabet aloud. Designate another person to say "Stop". Once this person says "Stop", the one saying the English alphabet stops, and repeats the last letter said.

At this point, have all learners fill out each of the columns with a word that starts with the last letter said (except for the Score column), as shown in the next table.

Letter	Name	Place	Verb	Adjective	Thing	Expression	Score
N	Nathan	New York	need	nice	night	nice to meet you	

The first one to finish all columns says "Stop", and everyone else stops writing.

The class reviews their lists. For every non-repeated item, a person receives 10 points. If an item is repeated, each person using it receives 5 points.

Have learners sum their points for that particular letter, and have them write it in the Score column. Then, start another round.

After a few rounds, have learners sum up their total number of points. The person with the highest score wins.

Instructors' preparation

Little preparation is required. The only preparation required is to identify the names of each column and make sure that it is something learners can fill in. Also, make sure you bring enough paper and pens (or pencils) for learners to participate.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be familiar with the vocabulary and items covered in the current and past modules studied. This will be their basis for filling out each column.

Notes

Assistant instructors may play, though they will not be able to say "Stop" once they have filled out all columns.

Assistant instructors should also not help learners so that no learner has an advantage over the others. Assistant instructors may observe and monitor learners during the activity.



Activity instructions

Divide the class into two groups. A team representative comes forward and decides whether to choose a number or let the other team choose a number. One of them chooses a number between 1-20. You read a prepared statement that matches the chosen number. The team representatives have to quickly respond to the statement in a logical and correct way. For example, if you read the statement:

What are your responsibilities?

A team representative could say:

I have to attend class.

If the answer is appropriate, the team representative has given his or her team 45 seconds to say related but different statements.

The team earns a point per correct statement, until time is up.

Send the team representatives back to their team. Have other representatives come up and restart the activity.

The team with most points wins.

Instructors' preparation

Little preparation is required. Make sure you prepare statements that relate to your module's objectives (current and current or past, depending on what you would like to review) and number them.

Also make sure you have enough statements for all learners to participate.

Bring the statements and a timer to class.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be familiar with the vocabulary and items covered in the current and past modules studied. This will be their basis to properly respond to your statements.

Notes

Assistant instructors may help keep track of time, scores, and the numbers chosen to get the initial statement.

If the class is small and assistant instructors wish to participate, they should participate against someone with the same level of English skills. Further, assistant instructors should only participate during the first part of the game (when players respond to the instructor's statement).

Assistant instructors should not participate when the team has to give related statements in 45 seconds.

To add more competitiveness to the game and as English skills allow, you could do the following:

- Ask learners to create a dialog, rather than just give related statements. This would really increase the challenge of the activity.
- After the team has finished making statements for 45 seconds, give the other team a chance to correct mistakes made by the first team.
- Give the other team, the challenger team, the option to steal the points. If the team accepts, the team will have 30 seconds to add related statements to the ones given by the first team. If the challenger team adds the same amount of statements or more than the first team, the challenger team gets a point per statement made, and all of the points from the statements made by the first group.



What do you see?

Activity instructions

Divide learners into pairs or small groups (no bigger than five). Give each group a picture. Ask learners to describe what they see in the picture, using as many vocabulary words as possible. Words or phrases used should be related to the module being studied as well as past modules. Ask learners to be creative and use as many words as possible to describe the picture.

Instructors' preparation

Preparation is required. You will need to look through pictures or images and select those that best apply to what learners are capable of describing. These images should contain vocabulary or expressions seen in the current and past modules.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be familiar with the vocabulary and items covered in the current and past modules studied. This will be their basis to work on this activity.

Notes

This activity might be a good opportunity for learners to review current and previous vocabulary. It can also be a great opportunity for learners to learn new related vocabulary to what they are studying.

As learners describe the picture, you (or the assistant instructors) may ask learners what they can tell about the weather, what objects they see, what colors they see, and the number of a particular item (people, car, tress, etc.) they see. This will help learners practice as much vocabulary as possible.

You may have each assistant instructor bring up to three pictures and work with a small group of learners to have them describe their pictures.

When doing this activity for the first time, do the first picture as a class (it would be best to project this image so that everyone can see it, and have different class members raise their hands to describe what they see.



Wheel of fortune

Activity instructions

Divide the class as evenly as possible into 2, 3, 4, or 5 teams.

On the board draw horizontal lines, each representing a letter of the word the class needs to guess. This word has to come from the Learn English book, specifically, the module the class is currently working on (or a previous one).

Each team will take turns to guess the mysterious word, a letter at a time. Thus, when the team has its turn, it can choose to guess a consonant. If the consonant is in the word, write it in the proper place(s), and give the team a point for every time the consonant shows in the word. Once a team has stated their consonant, it is up to another team to take its turn.

Whenever a team reaches five points, it can choose to either say a consonant or state a vowel. The team will not get any additional points for correctly guessing any of the vowels.

If a team feels confident about knowing what the mysterious word is, it can choose to get its turn at any point of the game and say their guess. If their guess is correct, the team earns 20 points. If the guess is wrong, the team gets a maximum deduction of 10 points (no negative points are given).

Once a team figures out what the mysterious word is, the teams start a new round with a different word.

The team with the highest score wins.

Instructors' preparation

Some preparation is required. The only preparation required is to identify words (phrases, or expressions) that learners would have seen in class. You may decide to only use words (phrases, or expressions) from the module being studied, or, to use words (phrases or expressions) from current and past modules.

Make sure you have a list big enough to give learners a chance to get a good review.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be familiar with the vocabulary and items covered in the current and past modules studied. This will be their basis for asking for consonants, vowels, and ultimately guessing the mysterious word.

Notes

You may use expressions or phrases from the module, to give variety and more chances for teams to succeed.

The amount of teams and team members on each team will vary according to your class size. If possible, try to keep teams small (groups no bigger than five), to increase all learners' participation.

Assistant instructors may help keeping track of time and scores. Assistant instructors may help you prepare expressions, phrases or words for the game. They may actually carry out this activity.

Assistant instructors should not give hints or participate in guessing the mysterious word unless their participation is kept to a minimum (like requesting a specific vowel) and does not give any team an advantage over the other teams. Assistant instructors should not be the ones guessing the word or telling their team what they think the mysterious word is.

Activity instructions

Divide learners into small groups (or in pairs). Give learners reading materials options for them to read aloud. Have assistant instructors be available to answer learners' questions or support them in their reading as needed. Reading aloud appropriate materials will help learners practice their pronunciation, identify vocabulary they already know, learn new words, and develop some reading skills.

Instructors' preparation

Prepare for this activity by looking for material that is both appropriate for the learners' level and to Church standards.

Reading materials include:

- Scriptures: such as the Book of Mormon, Articles of Faith, and Joseph Smith—History (found at the end of the Pearl of Great Price).
- Words of modern prophets: General Conference talks, messages and articles published in Church magazines.
- Other Church publications: such as articles in the Liahona, Ensign, New Era, and Friends magazines.
- Children stories:
 - If you have access to the internet, find children stories online. There are many sites offering them.
 - Libraries, friends, and acquaintance might help you get a hold of children books.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be familiar with the vocabulary and items covered in the current and past modules studied. This will be their basis for being able to read aloud new materials, asking questions, and understanding their readings.

Notes

Assistant instructors may work with learners to help them read and understand their reading. However, assistant instructors need to be careful to let the learner do most of the reading and talking. Assistant instructors may help learners with pronunciation issues, and answer some of their questions.

Children stories, as well as Friends and New Era articles, are a great source of reading. They are typically short, have commonly used words, and are written in a way that is simple to understand them. Also, many of these books have images that can help learners better understand what they are reading. Not every learner might like reading children stories, so it is good to bring a variety of readings so that everyone can find something they like.

The Book of Mormon might be a good choice, especially if class members are familiar with it, and wish to improve their Church vocabulary.

General Conference talks often have stories, and commonly used words.

Articles published in Church magazines are typically shorter than General Conference talks.



Activity instructions

Write a tongue twister on the board. Then, model how to say it. Have learners repeat it after you. If the whole tongue twister is too much for learners, have them repeat a set of words after you, until you finish the tongue twister and learners can say it completely.

After two or three times, start increasing the speed at which the tongue twister is said. See how fast learners can say it correctly.

Instructors' preparation

Find some good tongue twisters to help learners better pronounce their English words. If you are concerned about a particular sound learners need help with, find a tongue twister that will help them better say that sound.

Learners' preparation

No preparation is required for learners.

Notes

Common English tongue twisters are:

- How much would a woodchuck chuck if a woodchuck could chuck wood?
- Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers. How many pickled peppers did Peter Piper pick?
- Can you can a can as a canner can can a can?
- I wish to wish the wish you wish to wish, but if you wish the wish the witch wishes, I won't wish the wish you wish to wish.
- She sells seashells by the seashore.
- I saw Susie sitting in a shoeshine shop.



What are they doing?

Activity instructions

Divide learners into pairs or small groups (no bigger than five). Show learners pictures of different people doing different things. Learners should describe what they think the people in the pictures are doing.

Instructors' preparation

Preparation is required. You will need to look through pictures or images and select those that best apply to what learners are capable of describing.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be familiar with the vocabulary and items covered in the current and past modules studied. This will be their basis to work on this activity.

Notes

This activity is helpful to review the 60 common English verbs. Depending on the level learners are at, you may have learners just state a verb, conjugate the verb, or create a full sentence in the present, future, or past tense.

You may also turn this activity into a game by turning the pictures into cards, and giving learners a specific time to go through them. An assistant instructor can help monitor each group's progress. Every time a learner makes a correct sentence of what the people in the cards may be doing, the team earns a point, and another card is drawn to play. When time is up, each team should count the number of points earned. The team with the most points wins.

You may have each assistant instructor bring up to three pictures and work with a small group of learners to have them describe their pictures.

When doing this activity for the first time, model the activity or do the first picture as a class (it would be best to project this image so that everyone can see it).



Activity instructions

Divide learners into small pairs. Give learners a stack of cards facing down, each with a secret word on it, and other related words. The person picking up the card needs to give clues about the secret word to his or her partner, without using any of the related words. Once the peer has guessed the secret word, learners switch roles and start playing with a different card.

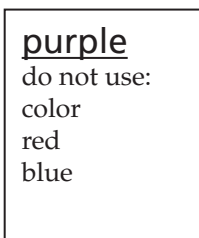
Set a timer to an appropriate time for learners to go through the stack. The timing will depend on learners' English skills, and the amount of cards you have provided for them. Tell learners when to start and when to stop.

Once they have stopped, have learners count the number of cards for which they got the correct word. The team that correctly guesses the most amount of words wins.

Instructors' preparation

Some preparation is required. Go through the module's activities and choose words, phrases or expressions that will have been covered by the time the game will be played. Write the secret word(s) on a piece of paper and underneath one to three words that should not be used as clues. The number of words forbidden to be used will depend on learners' English skills and vocabulary covered in class.

The paper could look something like this:



Since learners will want to go through the stack quickly, it is best to use cardboard for the words. However, regular paper should work as well. Feel free to use a quarter (or less) of a piece of paper for each card.

Learners' preparation

Little preparation is required. Learners should be familiar with the vocabulary and items covered in the current and past modules studied. This will be their basis to guess the secret word, phrase or expression.

Notes

Make sure you bring an equal number of stacks of paper for each pair (small group).

When explaining the game, make sure learners understand they cannot repeat cards. Learners will need to put the cards they have gone through in a different place than the stack that they still need to draw to play.



Watch a video clip

Activity instructions

Learners watch a video clip (about three times) that is appropriate according to LDS standards and learners' English skills. As they watch the clip, learners will be looking for specific things as told by the instructor. After learners have watched the video clip, they share their answers with the class and discuss the video clip.

Instructors' preparation

Videos can be a great way to engage learners. It will also help them with their English skills. To select appropriate video clips for your class do the following:

- Make sure the video clips you show are appropriate. Video clips should follow LDS Church standards. Please watch the whole video clip before showing it to the class. This will help you avoid unpleasant surprises.
- Select small video clips. Video clips around three minutes are ideal. Avoid showing clips that run longer than five minutes. You will likely lose learners' attention, and you might even overwhelm them.
- Choose video clips that match your learners' English skills. Video clips should challenge your learners, but should not be too far from their comprehension. Challenge your learners, but do not overwhelm them.
- Look for video clips that match your learners' interests. There are plenty of appropriate videos to choose from. Choose one(s) that match your learners' interests.
- Choose video clips with a purpose. Though a video is often a more relaxing activity, it should still have a purpose. You may choose to show videos that demonstrate cultural aspects of the English culture closest to your native country; videos to review the future tense, to add vocabulary, reinforce a module's objective, etc. Avoid showing a video just because it is a different type of activity. Learners will be able to tell when you are prepared, and will likely be much more engaged if you have chosen a video with a purpose in mind.

The following points outline an effective way to use a video clip.

- Give a preview of the video content. Tell learners what the video is about. You do not have to summarize the video, just tell enough so that learners can get an idea of the video's content.

Example:

The video we will watch is about a New York music executive. He talks about his work, his family, and things he likes to do.

- Ask learners questions related to the video. This will help learners anticipate what they could listen in the video. This will also be an opportunity to help learners review or learn specific vocabulary.

Example:

What words do you use to talk about your family?

- Ask learners to look for specific things in the video. This will help learners focus when watching the video.

Example:

Look for the following in the video:

- o How many children does Ryan have?
- o What is "squash"?
- o How does Ryan describe himself?
- o What did you like about the video?
- Show the video two or three times. Ask learners to focus for general meaning the first time. Then for the second and third times, ask them to focus on answering your questions.
- Discuss questions with the learners. Review learners' answers. Further, you may choose to have learners share something they learned or liked about the video. The latter can turn into a fun and interesting activity as learners might share insights or commonalities shared with the people shown in the video.

Learners' preparation

No preparation is required for learners. Learners should be studying and learning English in between classes. Learners should be familiar with the module's vocabulary as well as modules already covered in class.

Notes

Make sure you have the equipment necessary to show and project the video in class.

The internet is a great resource for finding video clips. Again, be cautious of what you select. Make sure you have watched all of the video before showing it to the class to avoid unpleasant surprises.

I'm a Mormon videos are a great resources for short and appropriate videos.

Consider creating handouts with key vocabulary, or with specific questions for learners to pay attention to while watching the video. This will help learners better prepare to understand the video clip.

If you do not bring handouts, write the questions on the board, so that learners can see and review them as they watch the video. Bring paper for learners to write down their answers.

If the audio clip is too hard to understand, and if close captions are available, consider turning them on when showing the video to the class.

Supplemental Career English

INTRODUCTION TO CAREER ENGLISH—
FOR FUTURE PRACTICE AND REFERENCE

© 2016 by Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All right reserved. English approval: 8/16.
Translation approval: 8/16. PD60003563 for 002

Introduction to Career English

Congratulations on completing the first 17 modules of English For You Now! You are now ready for Career English. You are encouraged to select, study, and practice the modules for the careers of most interest to you, along with the corresponding vocabularies in the back of Career English.

Career English is designed to help you develop the English capacity that will assist you to obtain employment or advance in careers that require English. The careers currently covered are as follows:

- Airlines
- Hotels
- Tourism
- Banking
- Business
- Import and Export

The dialogs for each of these career modules identify a set of business vocabulary in the back of the book that corresponds to that career. In addition, basic vocabulary and basic verb study sections are also included.

Other skills that would be useful for your employment:

Over the last several years, the LDS Church has done studies and concluded that, in addition to English skills, basic working computer skills could help large numbers of our people obtain and improve their employment. In turn, this would allow them to support their families and better serve in the Church in their own countries. Many careers require good working computer skills with Windows and Microsoft Word, and sometimes Excel and PowerPoint are also required. Training courses in such skills are offered by various technical schools and sometimes financed by your government. We encourage you to go to the Self-Reliance Services center for your stake, your country's government sources, and local educational institutions to identify such possible courses in computer skills.

Instructions for Career Module and Vocabulary Practice

Career English modules and materials can be found online at <http://learningenglish.mtc.byu.edu>

From the CLS home page, click on **CLS Materials**. On the **Materials Center** page, click on **CLS Documents**. On the **Documents** page, scroll to the bottom to see “Book 3 - Career English.” This book is available as a pdf to download.

Table of Contents

Learners should study and practice the modules and vocabulary for the careers that most interest them. Using the table below, the instructor and assistant instructors ask what careers the learners are interested in studying. Then, they create breakout mini-classes for the learners interested in each career. In these mini-classes, the instructors project or distribute the corresponding modules and practice those modules with the group of interested learners.

Airlines . . . 2

1. Job Interview with the Airlines . . . 3
2. Airline Ticket Agent Dialog . . . 7
3. In-Flight Conversation . . . 11

Hotels . . . 26

7. Hotel Job Interview . . . 27
8. Restaurant Hostess Dialog . . . 31
9. Restaurant Waitress Dialog . . . 34
10. Bellhop Dialog . . . 37

Tourism . . . 41

11. Tourist Guide Job Interview . . . 42
12. Tourist Guide Dialog . . . 46

Banking . . . 50

13. Bank Teller Job Interview . . . 51
14. Bank Teller Dialog . . . 55

Business . . . 58

15. Business Job Interview . . . 59
16. Company Receptionist Job Interview . . . 62
17. Receptionist Dialog . . . 66
18. Administrative Assistant Dialog . . . 69
19. Executive Secretary Job Interview . . . 72
20. Executive Secretary Dialog . . . 76

Import and Export . . . 80

- 21. Import and Export Job Interview . . . 81
- 22. Import and Export Dialog . . . 85

Business Vocabulary . . . 89

- 21. Advertising . . . 90
- 22. Air Travel . . . 97
- 23. Banking . . . 104
- 24. Budget and Accounting . . . 110
- 25. Business . . . 118
- 26. Resumé . . . 133
- 27. Correspondence . . . 141
- 28. Employment . . . 144
- 29. Insurance . . . 148
- 30. Money Matters . . . 151
- 31. Presentations . . . 154
- 32. Sales and Selling . . . 158

Basic Vocabulary Study . . . 163

- 1. Feelings and Descriptions . . . 164
- 2. How's the Weather? . . . 166
- 3. Buying Groceries . . . 168
- 4. Applying for a Job . . . 171
- 5. Giving Directions . . . 173
- 6. The Body . . . 176
- 7. Map of USA . . . 178
- 8. Word Constructs . . . 179
- 9. Word Categories . . . 180
- 10. Word Webs . . . 181

In addition, on the <http://learningenglish.mtc.byu.edu> website, you will find a basic English grammar workbook. On the Documents page, click on the Basic English Grammar Workbook or the download arrow next to it. This workbook will provide you very valuable practice and continued important learning. You should use a pencil as you work with it so you can make corrections with the help of your instructor or a native English speaker.

THE CHURCH OF
JESUS CHRIST
OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS

Self-Reliance Services
PERPETUAL EDUCATION FUND

